

Ora Maritima Series

# ORA MARITIMA

A LATIN STORY FOR BEGINNERS

PROF. E.A. SONNENSCHN, D. LITT.



ORA MARITIMA

# Cornell University Library

BOUGHT WITH THE INCOME  
FROM THE  
SAGE ENDOWMENT FUND  
THE GIFT OF  
**Henry W. Sage**  
1891

A. 267810

23/IX/12

Cornell University Library  
arV11170

Ora maritima :



3 1924 031 202 850  
olin,anx



Cornell University  
Library

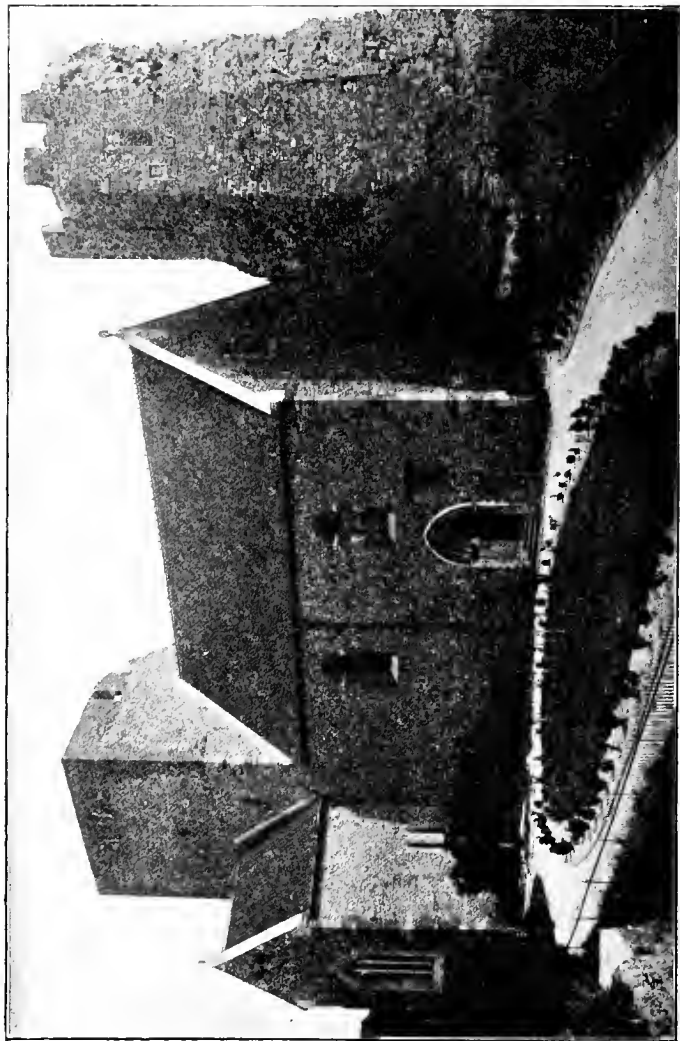
The original of this book is in  
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in  
the United States on the use of the text.









BASILICA SANCTAE MARIAE AD DUBRASCUM SPECULA ROMANA.

*Photographed by M. Jacodette.*

*Vontispice.*



# ORA MARITIMA

A LATIN STORY FOR BEGINNERS

WITH GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES

BY

E. A. SONNENSCH<sup>W</sup>EIN, D.LITT., OXON.

PROFESSOR OF LATIN AND GREEK IN THE  
UNIVERSITY OF BIRMINGHAM

*Natura non facit saltum*

SEVENTH



EDITION

LONDON

KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LIM<sup>D</sup>.  
BROADWAY HOUSE, CARTER LANE, E.C.



## PREFACE

My apology for adding another to the formidable array of elementary Latin manuals is that there is no book in existence which satisfies the requirements which I have in mind as of most importance for the fruitful study of the language by beginners. What I desiderate is :—

1. A continuous narrative from beginning to end, capable of appealing in respect of its vocabulary and subject matter to the minds and interests of young pupils, and free from all those syntactical and stylistic difficulties which make even the easiest of Latin authors something of a problem.

2. A work which shall hold the true balance between too much and too little in the matter of systematic grammar. In my opinion, existing manuals are disfigured by a disproportionate amount of *lifeless Accidence*. The outcome of the traditional system is that the pupil learns a multitude of Latin *forms* (Cases, Tenses, Moods), but very little Latin. That is to say, he acquires a bowing acquaintance with all the forms of Nouns and Verbs—such as Ablatives in *a, e, i, o, u*, 3rd Persons in *at, et, it*, and so forth—before he gets a real hold of the meaning or use of any of these forms. But, as Goethe said in a different connexion, “What one cannot use is a heavy burden”; and my experience leads me to think that a multitude of forms acts as an encumbrance to the pupil at an early stage by distracting his attention from the more vital matters of vocabulary, sentence construction, and order of words. The real meaning of the Ablative, for instance, can be just as well learned from the 1st Declension as from all the declensions taken together. And further, to run over all the declensions without proper understanding of their meanings and

uses with and without Prepositions is a real danger, as begetting all sorts of misconception and error—so much so that the muddled pupil too often never learns the syntax of the Cases at all. No doubt all the Declensions and Conjugations must be learned before a Latin author is attacked. But when a few of them have been brought within the pupil's ken, he finds little difficulty in mastering the others in a rapid and more mechanical fashion. In the present book I have dealt directly with only three declensions of Nouns and Adjectives and the Indicative Active of *sum* and of the 1st Conjugation (incidentally introducing some of the forms of Pronouns, and those forms of the Passive which are made up with the Verb-adjectives, as in English); but in connexion with this amount of Accidence I have treated very carefully the most prominent uses of the Cases with and without Prepositions, and the question of the order of words, which I have reduced to a few simple rules. It is my hope that teachers who trust themselves to my guidance in this book will agree with me in thinking that the time spent on such fundamental matters as these is not thrown away. The pupil who has mastered this book ought to be able to read and write the easiest kind of Latin with some degree of fluency and without serious mistakes: in a word, Latin ought to have become in some degree a living language to him.

Above all it is my hope that my little story may be read with pleasure by those for whom it is meant. The picture which it gives of the early Britons is intended to be historically correct, so far as it goes; and the talk about "anchors" and "boats" and "holidays" will perhaps be acceptable as a substitute for "iustitia," "modestia," "temperantia," and the other abstract ideas which hover like ghosts around the gate of Latin.<sup>1</sup> I have kept my Vocabulary strictly classical, in spite of the temptation to introduce

---

<sup>1</sup> "The pupil ordinarily approaches Latin and Greek through a cloud of abstractions."—A. SIDGWICK.

topics of purely modern interest, such as bicycles: in the later sections of the book it is Caesarian. The number of words in the vocabulary is relatively large; but words are necessary if anything worth saying is to be said, and a large proportion of my words have a close resemblance to the English words derived from them. Apart from this, the acquisition of a working vocabulary is an essential part of any real mastery of a language, and it is a task eminently within the powers of the youthful mind.

In regard to the quasi-inductive study of grammar I have expressed myself in an article contributed to Mr. Sadler's *Special Reports*, extracts from which are given below. But I wish it to be understood that there is nothing in this book to prevent its being used by teachers who prefer the traditional method of teaching the Grammar before the sections of the story and the Exercises in which it is embodied. All the Grammar required is given in the "Preparations" (e.g. pp. 65, 66, 67, 69, etc.) It will be clear from these tables and from my "Drill Exercises" that I by no means undervalue the importance of systematic training of the memory in the early stages of learning.

In the present edition (1908) I have marked the naturally long vowels in the text, as in the "Preparations" and the alphabetical vocabulary. But I have deliberately abstained from burdening the memory of pupils and teachers with subtleties of pronunciation, such as are involved in the marking of "hidden quantities" (except in such obvious cases as *rēx*, *lūx*, *nōndum*): e.g. *rēxi* from *rēgo*, *tēxi* from *tēgo*, *cōnstat* but *cōndit*, *infert* but *intulit*, *insanus* but *incultus*. If a warning is needed against encumbering the teaching of Latin with difficult questions of this kind, it will be found emphatically expressed in the recommendations of many of the *Lehrpläne* issued by German educational authorities.

Most of the passages will be found too long for one lesson, unless with older pupils. They must be split up, according to circumstances.

It is possible that some teachers may prefer to use this book not as a first book in the strict sense of the term, but rather after say a year's work at some other book; and I can well imagine that it might be used to good purpose in this way, for instance as a bridge to Caesar, whose invasions of Britain are narrated in outline in my Chapters VIII.-XIV., or for practice in rapid reading side by side with an author.

My best thanks are due to Lord Avebury for permission to reproduce the photographs of Roman and British coins which appear in this volume, especially of the coin of Antoninus Pius with the figure of Britannia upon it—the prototype of our modern penny.

E. A. S.

BIRMINGHAM,

*November, 1908.*

The following passages have struck me since my Preface was written as throwing light on the idea of this book.

*"The real question is not whether we shall go on teaching Latin, but what we can do to teach it so as to make learners understand that it is not a dead language at all."*—Sir F. POLLOCK, in the 'Pilot,' Jan. 12th, 1901.

*"We must convince our pupils of the reality of the study [Latin] by introducing them at as early a period as possible to a real book."*—P. A. BARNETT in "Common Sense in Education and Teaching," p. 210.

*"Assimilate the system of teaching the classical languages to that which I have shadowed forth for modern language teaching."*—Professor MAHAFFY, Address to Modern Language Association, Dec., 1901.

# CONTENTS

|  | PAGE  |
|--|---|
| NEWER METHODS IN THE TEACHING OF LATIN - - | 11  |
| TEXT.                                      |   |
| I.—ORA MARITIMA - -                        | 1st Declension, with the<br>Present Indicative of<br><i>sum</i> and of the 1st<br>Conjugation - 23  |
| II.—PATRUUS MEUS - -                       | 2nd Declension in <i>-us</i> 26   |
| III.—MONUMENTA ANTIQUA - -                 | 2nd Declension in <i>um</i> - 28  |
| IV.—DELECTAMENTA PUERORUM                  | 2nd Declension; words<br>like <i>puer</i> - - 30  |
| V.—MAGISTER NOSTER - -                     | 2nd Declension; words<br>like <i>magister</i> - 32  |
| VI.—BRITANNIA ANTIQUA - -                  | Mixed forms of 1st and<br>2nd Declension, with<br>Past Imperfect Indic-<br>ative of <i>sum</i> and of<br>the 1st Conjugation<br>(Active Voice) - - 33 |
| VII.—VESTIGIA ROMANORUM - -                | The other Tenses of<br>the Indicative of<br><i>sum</i> and of the<br>1st Conjugation<br>(Active Voice) 38   |

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| VIII.—EXPEDITIO PRIMA C. IULII  |      |
| CAESARIS - - - 3rd Declension -   | 43   |
| IX.—PAX VIOLATA . - - - "   | 45   |
| X.—CERTAMINA VARIA - - - "  | 46   |
| XI.—NAVES ROMANAE - - - "   | 48   |
| XII.—GENTIUM BRITANNICARUM  |      |
| SOCIETAS - - - "  | 49   |
| XIII.—MARIA BRITANNICA - - - "  | 51   |
| XIV.—BRITANNIA PACATA - - - Recapitulation of 3rd Declension -                    | 51   |
| XVI.—ROBUR ET AES TRIPLEX - - - Adjectives of 3rd Declension -                    | 55   |
| PREPARATIONS AND GRAMMAR - - -  | 59   |
| DRILL EXERCISES ON THE TEXT   |      |
| Latin Drill, Conversations, etc., with English sentences for re-translation - - - | 101  |
| APPENDICES  |      |
| I. How to translate the Latin Gerundive and Gerund                                | 138  |
| II. How to translate the principal English Prepositions                           | 141  |
| LATIN ENGLISH VOCABULARY . - -  | 145  |



## NEWER METHODS IN THE TEACHING OF LATIN

---

We are familiar with the watchwords of two opposed camps on the subject of language-teaching. The old-fashioned view that the "declining of nouns and verbs," to use Dr. Johnson's phrase, is a necessary preliminary to the reading of any text is nowadays met with the continental cry of "Fort mit der Grammatik!" But we are not really compelled to accept either of these harsh alternatives, as the more moderate adherents of the new German school are now fain to admit. Grammar has its proper place in any systematised method of teaching a language; but that place is not at the beginning but rather at the end of each of the steps into which a well-graduated course must be divided. Speaking of the course as a whole, we may say that the learning of grammar should proceed side by side with the reading of a text. The old view, which is far from extinct at the present day, though it is rarely carried out in all its rigour, was that the pupil must learn the rules of the game before he attempts to play it. The modern view is that just as in whist or hockey one learns the rules by playing the game, so in the study of a language one learns the grammar best by the reading of a simple text. But

---

\* Extracted from an article contributed to Mr. Sadler's *Special Reports*.

it is necessary at once to draw a distinction, which marks the difference between the earlier and the more developed form of the new method. The mistake made by the first zealots of the new school was that they plunged the pupil without preparation into the reading of what were called "easy passages,"—passages taken from any ordinary book, and easy perhaps as compared with other passages which might have been selected, but still bristling with a multitude of heterogeneous forms and constructions. This was an "inductive method" with a vengeance; but it soon became evident that to expect a young beginner to work his way through such a jungle to the light of clear grammatical consciousness was to expect too much;\* and even for the adult beginner the process is slow and laborious. For what is the object of grammar unless to make the facts of a language accessible and intelligible by presenting them in a simple arrangement? Here as elsewhere science ought surely to step in as an aid, not an obstacle, to understanding. What the advocates of the new school failed to see was that "nature" cannot dispense with "art"; in other words that the text which is to serve as the basis of an inductive study of the language must be specially constructed so as to exhibit those features on which the teacher desires to lay stress at a particular stage of learning.

What is the ordinary English practice at the present day? On this point others are more competent to speak than I; but I imagine I am not far wrong in saying that the first step in learning Latin is to spend a month or two in learning declensions and conjugations by rote—not, let us hope, complete with their irregularities and exceptions, but in outline. The pupil

---

\* A distinguished representative of the *Neuere Richtung* admitted in conversation with the present writer some years ago that the teaching of French out of his own book was "Hundesarbeit" (*horse-work*.)

then proceeds to the reading and writing of easy sentences, perhaps in such a book as "Gradatim"; and after say a year or more he will be reading easy selections from a Latin author. All the while he recapitulates his grammar and extends his grammatical horizon. This is, in any case, an immense improvement on the older plan of learning the whole of the old Eton Latin Grammar in its Latin dress without understanding a word of what is meant by its "as in praesenti" and other mysteries. If wisely administered, this method may also avoid the error of "Henry's First Latin Book," which taught an intolerable deal of Accidence and Syntax to a half-pennyworth of text; though, on the other hand, Henry's First Latin Book was an attempt to accompany the learning of grammar with the reading of easy sentences from the very beginning, and in so far was better than the method we are considering. For I must maintain, with all deference to the opinion of others whose experience is wider than my own, that we are as yet far from having drawn the full conclusions of the process of reasoning on which we have entered. There should be no preliminary study of grammar apart from the reading of a text. The declensions and conjugations, learned by rote apart from their applications, cannot be properly assimilated or understood, and often prove a source of error rather than enlightenment in subsequent study. They have to be learned over and over again—always in doses which are too large for digestion, and the pupil has meanwhile been encouraged to form a bad habit of mind. Half knowledge in this case too often leads to the unedifying spectacle of the Sixth Form boy or the University undergraduate who is still so shaky in his accidence that he cannot pass his "Smalls" without a special effort, though in some respects he may be a good scholar. But still more serious is the effect of the false conceptions which are inevitably implanted in the mind by this method of grammar without understanding. The pupil learns *mensā*, "by or with a table,"

*agricolā*, "by or with a farmer"—both of them impossible Latin for the English in its natural sense; *mensae* meaning strictly "to a table" is almost impossible in any elementary context. Yet the pupil necessarily supposes that in some context or other they must have those meanings; it is often years before he discovers that he has been the victim of a practical joke. Some boys never see the fun to the bitter end; in other words, they never learn the syntax of the Cases at all. And where are the counterbalancing advantages of this method? The pupil is introduced at an early stage to the reading of selections from Latin authors. But what if the interest and stimulus of reading consecutive passages could be secured without the sacrifice of clearness and grasp which is involved in the method of preliminary grammar? The advantages would seem in that case to be all on one side. Each new grammatical feature of the language would be presented as it is wanted, in an interesting context, and would be firmly grasped by the mind; at convenient points the knowledge acquired would be summed up in a table (the declension of a noun or the forms of a tense). The foundations of grammar would thus be securely laid; there would be no traps for the understanding, because each new feature would be presented in concrete form, that is in a context which explained it. For example, instead of *mensā*, "by or with a table," etc., we should have *in mensā*, "on a table," *cum agricolā*, "with a farmer," *ab agricolā*, "by a farmer"; *ad mensam*, "to a table" or sometimes "by (i.e. near) a table;" *agricolae dat*, but not *mensae dat*. After one declension had been caught in this way, the others would not need so elaborate a treatment. But still the old rule of "festina lente" would warn the teacher not to impose too great a burden on the young or even the adult beginner; it is no light task to learn simultaneously forms and their meanings, vocabulary, and the fundamental facts of syntax. It must be admitted that the method which I am advocating is a slow one at first; but it is sure, and binds fast. The method of pre-

liminary grammar might be called the railroad method. The traveller by rail travels fast, but he sees little of the country through which he is whirled. The longest way round is often the shortest way home; and my experience has been that the time spent at the start without proceeding beyond the very elements of grammar is time well spent. A fair vocabulary is acquired—without effort—in the course of reading; for the learning of new words, especially if they are chosen so as to present obvious similarities to English words, is a task eminently within the powers of the youthful mind; and all words met with in an interesting context arouse attention and impress themselves on the mind of their own accord. All the while the pupil is forming his feeling for the language and gradually becoming habituated to ordinary ways of saying ordinary things. He gradually loses that sense of strangeness which is the great barrier to anything like mastery.\* It is surprising how much can be said in Latin without using more than a single declension of nouns and adjectives and a single conjugation of verbs.† The habit of reading very easy Latin, thus acquired at an early stage, will prove of the utmost value when the pupil approaches the study of a Latin author. Such a book as I have in mind should therefore do something to bridge over the formidable chasm which at present separates the reading of isolated sentences from the reading of an author.

All Latin authors as they stand, are far too difficult to serve as a basis of study for beginners: and they are also, I may add, not well adapted in respect of subject matter and

---

\*One great advantage of this method, especially for learners who are able to cover the ground at a fair rate of progress, is that it lends itself to acquiring the "art of *reading* Latin" (as distinct from the art of *construing* it), to use Prof. W. G. Hale's phrase—the art of rapid reading.

† There are some 1,000 verbs of the first conjugation in Latin (including compounds).

sentiment to appeal to the mind of the very young. Caesar may no doubt be made interesting to a boy or girl of twelve by a skilful teacher with the aid of maps and pictures. But, after all, the Gallic War can never be what it was never meant to be, a child's book. The ideal "Reader," which should be the centre of instruction during the early stages of a young pupil's course, should be really interesting; simple and straightforward in regard to its subject matter, modern in setting, and as classical as may be in form—a book which the pupil may regard with benevolent feelings, not with mere "gloomy respect,"\* as worth knowing for its own sake. It should be well illustrated with pictures, diagrams, and maps, provided always that the illustrations are to the point, and such as are really felt to be needed to explain the text and make it live. "Modern in setting," for otherwise the book will not appeal to the young mind; yet there is much justification for the demand made by many adherents of the newer school that the subject matter of any school book dealing with a foreign language should be closely associated with the history and the manners and customs of the people who spoke or speak the language. Possibly the two demands are not irreconcilable; the subject matter may be historical and national, but the point of view from which it is regarded may be modern. For English pupils learning Latin the reconciliation ought to present little difficulty; but nearly every great nation of Europe has its points of contact with Rome, and therefore its opportunities of constructing Latin Readers which are national in more senses than one. On the modern side they may be patriotic in tone, and inspired by that love of nature which appeals so directly to the youthful mind; on the ancient side they may be historical and instructive in the narrower sense of the term. And the illustrations should also have this two-fold character; they should include subjects both ancient and modern,

---

\* Lord Rosebery in his Rectorial Address at Glasgow, 1900.

it being always remembered in regard to the former that their object is not to make the boy or girl an archæologist, but simply to act as an aid to the imagination and enable it to realise what ancient civilisation was like. A good modern fancy sketch may often be more instructive from this point of view than a cut taken from a dictionary of antiquities.

The method which I advocate is, therefore, on its linguistic side, analogous in some respects to the so-called "natural method" or to the method by which an adult, left to his own resources, usually attempts to master a foreign tongue. He begins by attacking some easy book or newspaper, with the help of a dictionary, and he picks up the grammar as he goes along. The method is in both cases *heuristic*, in so far as the learner does not try to reconstruct the language out of the grammar, as a palæontologist reconstructs an extinct animal from a study of a few bones. But in the one case the learner works on a text which presents all the variety and complexity of nature; in the other, on a text which has been simplified and systematised by art, so as to lead directly to a clear view of certain fundamental grammatical facts. Granted the premises, I conceive that there will be no great difficulty in accepting the conclusion; for there can hardly be a better method of teaching a language than that which combines the systematic order of the grammar with the interest and life of the story-book. The crux of the situation is to write such a school book; and though it may be long before an ideal book of the kind is produced, the problem ought not to be impossible of solution, if once the necessity of a solution from the teaching point of view is realised. On the one hand the ideal book ought to have a sustained interest, and if possible to form a continuous narrative from beginning to end; otherwise much of the effect is lost; this adds materially to the difficulty of writing. On the other hand there are various considerations which lighten the task. The writer has before him an infinite variety of choice in regard to his subject matter; and

though his grammatical order must be systematic, he is under no obligation to confine himself absolutely to the narrowest possible grammatical field at each step. For example adjectives\* may be, as they should be on other grounds, treated side by side with the substantives which they resemble in form, and the easy forms of *possum* (e.g., *pot-es*, *pot-est*, *pot-eram*) side by side with the corresponding forms of *sum*. Here we have material for the building of sentences. We may even go further and admit a certain number of forms which anticipate future grammatical lessons, provided they are not too numerous or of such a character as to confuse the grammatical impression which it is the purpose in hand to produce. For example, forms like *inquam*, *inquit* might be introduced, if necessary, long before the learning of the defective verbs was reached; they would, of course, be accompanied by their translations and treated as isolated words without any grammatical explanation. Tact in introducing only such forms as are not liable to lead to false inferences is necessary; and, of course, the fewer such anticipations there are the better. A certain latitude must also be conceded in regard to idiom and style. While it is of importance that the pupil should come across nothing which might react disadvantageously on his future composition, it is mere pedantry to insist on any exalted standard of literary excellence. The writer who works under the limitation imposed by the conditions of the problem should not attempt any high style of diction; it is sufficient if his Latin is up to the standard of such isolated sentences as usually form the mental pabulum of the beginner, though it might well be somewhat higher.

I would here anticipate a possible objection. Would not such a book be too easy? Would it provide a sufficient amount of mental gymnastic to serve as a means of training the faculties of

---

\* Including Possessive Adjectives and Participles (Verb-adjectives).



reason and judgment? That would depend altogether on the aim which the writer set before himself. There is plenty of room within the limits of the first declension and the first conjugation for the training of the mind in habits of accurate thought and expression; for instance, the sentences may be made as difficult in regard to order of words as you please. But I would urge that they can hardly be made too easy at the beginning. It is sometimes forgotten that mental training is not synonymous with the inculcation of a mass of grammatical forms which only burden the memory, and that the habit of reading with care and fluency is itself a mental discipline of the highest value. What the teacher of any language has to do is not to accustom his pupil to regard each sentence as a nut to crack or a pitfall to beware of; but rather to induce him by the art of "gentle persuasion" to look upon the foreign tongue as a friend to be approached on terms of easy familiarity. Difficulties will accumulate fast enough, and I submit with all deference that it is a mistake to convert the learning of any foreign language into an obstacle race, by deliberately throwing difficulties into the path of the learner. Latin, at any rate, is hard enough in itself. And a habit of thoughtlessness is surely the last thing that will be encouraged by a method such as that sketched above, by which learning is made a matter of observation from the first, and not of unintelligent memorizing.

It goes without saying that the grammar to be taught in such a book should be limited to the necessary and normal. All that is in any way superfluous to the beginner should be rigorously excluded. But so soon as a general view of the whole field of regular accidence and the bare outlines of syntax has been attained by way of the Reader, the time has arrived for taking the pupil over the same ground again, as presented in the systematic form of the grammar. He is now in a position to understand what a grammar really is—not a collection of arbitrary rules, but a *catalogue raisonné* of the usages of a language based upon

observation and simplified by science. Successive recapitulations should take in more and more of what is abnormal, until a fairly comprehensive view of the whole field is obtained. The suggestions of whatever new texts are read should, of course, be utilised in preparing the mind for irregularities and exceptions ; but it is no longer perilous to study the grammar apart. Each course of grammar deepens the impression made by those which precede it, and at the same time extends the pupil's mental horizon, the successive courses being superimposed on one another like a number of concentric circles with ever widening diameters.

I have said nothing about the writing of Latin, because it is obvious at the present day that reading should be accompanied by writing from the first, and, what is even more important, that the sentences to be translated into Latin should be based on the subject matter and vocabulary of the Reader. Learning a language is largely an imitative process, and we must not expect our beginners to make bricks without straw, any more than we expect pupils at a more advanced age to compose in the style of Cicero or Livy without giving them plenty of models to work upon. It is more important to insist here on the importance of training the organs of speech and hearing even in learning a "dead language" like Latin. For a dead language is still a language, and cannot be properly grasped unless it has some contact with living lip and living ear. Let the pupil then become accustomed from the first to reading Latin aloud, and to reading it with intelligence and expression. It is a habit which does not come of itself ; but to teach it goes a long way towards making the language live again, and acts as a most valuable support to the memory. Let anyone try learning a little modern Greek, and he will appreciate the difference between remembering the accents by ear and remembering them by the eye alone. So, too, in regard to forms and vocabulary. What we have to familiarise our pupils with is

not merely the look of the word and the phrase and the sentence on paper, but still more, the shape of them to the ear.

From the point of view of the University a reform in school procedure, both on the literary and on the grammatical side, would confer great and lasting benefits.\* There must be many University teachers who, like the present writer, feel dissatisfied with the scrappy and haphazard knowledge of the classics commonly presented by students reading for Pass degrees. But the foundations must be laid during the long school course, as the developed flower must be present in the germ. By not hurrying over the initial stages, and by a wise guidance of the later steps, the consummation of a worthy classical culture may be reached in the end.

Christmas, 1900.

E. A. SONNENSCHN. E.

---

\* Professor Postgate (*Classical Review*, February, 1901) demands a "thorough revision of the modes and materials of classical and especially elementary classical teaching," adding, "Though we of the Universities have a serious grievance against the schools in that they send us so many mistaught on elementary points, and, what is worse, emptied of all desire to learn, we must not forget our own deficiencies."

## NOTE TO THE SIXTH EDITION.

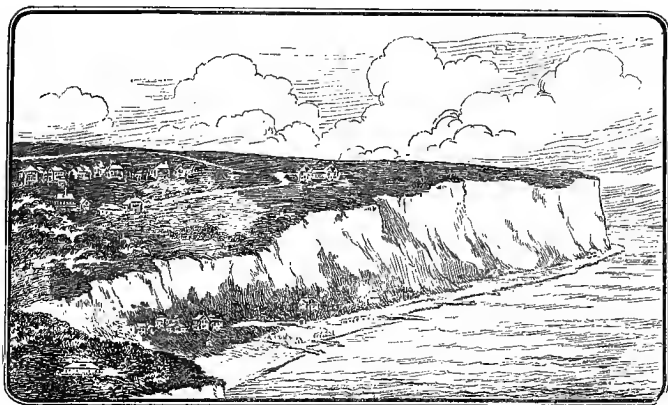
*In the present issue of this book I have, in deference to the wishes of many teachers, returned to the principle of marking long vowels in the text, which I adopted in my Parallel Grammar Series. As to the method of carrying out the principle I have stated my views in the Preface (p. vii).*

*I have also corrected one or two oversights to which I had called attention in previous issues (p. 119, l. 1, 'sometimes not' for 'not always'; p. 123, ll. 4 and 8 of § 23, 'tenth for seventh'). On p. 48, l. 5, I have substituted 'multa ex navigiis' for 'magnus numerus navigiorum,' in order to avoid raising a difficulty of construction. And there are a few other minor improvements of this kind (p. 130, § 31 B; p. 144 bottom). But in all essentials the book is unchanged.*

*I herewith express my cordial thanks to those teachers who have pointed out to me misprints or omissions in the vocabularies—in particular to Professor Postgate, Mr. F. E. A. Traves, Mr. R. S. Haydon, Miss A. F. E. Sanders. These oversights—not very many in number—have all been corrected in the present issue.*

*May I call the attention of teachers to the mistake, into which pupils easily fall, of pronouncing the word 'Maritima' like the French 'maritime' with the accent on the syllable ti-, instead of Marítima?*

ORA MARITIMA  
VEL  
COMMENTARII DE VITA MEA AD  
DUBRAS ANNO MDCCCXCIX



ORA MARITIMA INTER DUBRAS ET RŪTUPIAS.

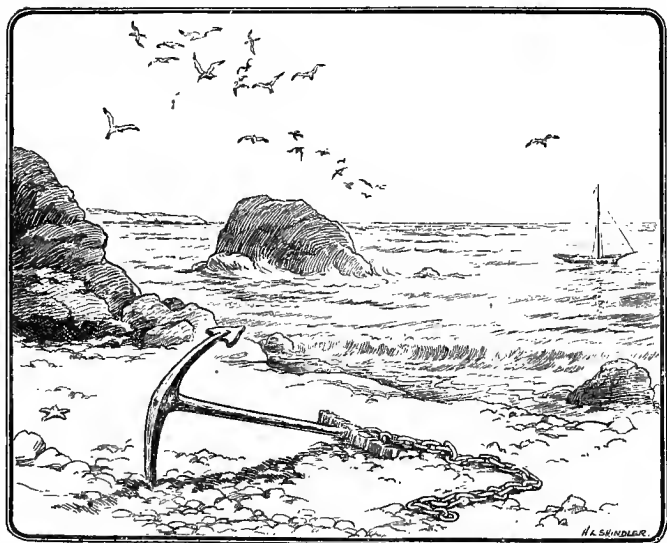
I. Ora maritima.

[First Declension of Nouns and Adjectives, together with the Present Indicative of *sum* and of the First Conjugation.]

1. Quam bella est ōra maritima! Nōn procul ab ōrā maritimā est villa. In villā amita mea habitat; et ego cum amitā meā nunc habitō. Ante iānuam villae est ārea. In āreā est castanea, ubi

luscinia interdum cantat. Sub umbrā castaneae ancilla interdum cēnam parat. Amō ōram maritimam ; amō villam bellam.

2. Fēriae nunc sunt. Inter fēriās in villā maritimā habitō. Ō beātās fēriās ! In arēnā ōrae maritimae sunt ancorae et catēnae. Nam incolae ōrae maritimae sunt nautae. Magna est audācia nautārum : procellās nōn formīdant. Nautās amō, ut nautae mē amant. Cum nautīs interdum in scaphīs nāvigō.



ANCORA ET CATENA—SCAPHA.

3. Ex fenestrīs villae undās spectās. Undās caeruleās amō. Quam magnae sunt, quam perlūcidae !

Post cēnam lūnam et stellās ex fenestrā meā spectō. Prope villam est silva, ubi cum amitā meā saepe ambulō. Quantopere nōs silva dēlectat! Ō cōpiam plantārum et herbārum! Ō cōpiam bācārum! Nōn solum nautae sed etiam agricolae circum habitant. Casae agricolārum parvae sunt. Nautae casās albās habitant. Amita mea casās agricolārum et nautārum saepe vīstat.

4. Victōria est rēgīna mea. Magna est glōria Victōriae Rēgīnae, nōn solum in insulīs Britannicīs sed etiam in Indiā, in Canadā, in Austrāliā, in Āfricā, ubi colōniae Britannicae sunt. Rēgīna est domina multārum terrārum. Britannia est domina undārum. In glōriā rēgīnae meae triumphō. Tē, Britannia, amō: vōs, insulae Britannicae, amō. Sed Britannia nōn est patria mea. Ex Āfricā Merīdiānā sum.

5. Lȳdia quoque, consōbrīna meā, apud amitam meam nunc habitat. Lȳdia columbās cūrat: cūra columbārum Lȳdiae magnam laetitiam dat. Tū, Lȳdia, cum apud magistrā tuam es, linguae Franco-gallicae et linguae Anglicae operam dās; sed ego linguīs antiquīs Romae et Graeciae operam dō. Saepe cum Lȳdiā ad silvam vel ad ōram maritimā ambulō. Interdum cum nautā in scaphā nāvigāmus. Quantopere nōs undae caeruleae dēlectant! Lȳdia casās agricolārum cum amitā meā interdum vīstat. Vōs, filiae agricolārum, Lȳdiam amātis, ut Lȳdia vōs amat. Ubi inopia est, ibi amitā mea inopiam levat.

## II. Patruus meus.

[Second Declension : Nouns and Adjectives in *us*].

6. Patruus meus quondam praefectus erat in Africā Merīdiānā. Nunc mīlitiā vacat, et agellō suō operam dat. Agellus patruī meī nōn magnus est. Circum villam est hortus. Mūrus hortī nōn altus est. Rīvus est prope hortum, unde aquam portāmus, cum hortum irrigāmus. In hortō magnus est numerus rosārum et violārum. Rosae et violae tibi, mī patruē, magnam laetitiam dant. Tū, Lȳdia, cum patruō meō in hortō saepe ambulās.

7. In angulō hortī sunt ulmī. In ulmīs coryī nīdificant. Corvōs libenter spectō, cum circum nīdōs suōs volitant. Magnus est numerus corvōrum in hortō patruī meī; multī mergī super ōceanum volitant. Vōs, mergī, libenter spectō, cum super ōceanum volitātis et praedam captātis. Ōceanus mergīs cibum dat. Patruum meum hortus et agellus suus dēlectant; in agellō sunt equī et vaccae et porcī et gallī gallīnaeque. Lȳdia gallōs gallīnāsque cūrat. Nōn procul ab agellō est vīcus, ubi rusticī habitant. Nōnnullī ex rusticīs agellum cum equīs et vaccīs et porcīs cūrant.

8. Ex hortō patruī meī scopulōs albōs ōrae maritimae spectāmus. Scopulī sunt altī. Et ōra Francogallica nōn procul abest. Noctū ex scopulīs pharōs ōrae Francogallicae spectāmus, velut stellās clārās in ōceanō. Quam bellus es, ōceane, cum lūna



undās tuās illustrat! Quantopere mē dēlectat vōs,  
undae caeruleae, spectāre, cum tranquillae estis et  
arēnam ōrae maritimae lavātis! Quantopere mē  
dēlectātis cum turbulentae estis et sub scopulis  
spūmātis et murmurātis!



VILLA MARITIMA.

ULMI ET CORVI.    MURUS.    IANUA.    RIVUS.    CASTANEA.    MERGI.

### III. Monumenta antiqua.

[Nouns and Adjectives in *um*].

9. Agellus patruī meī in Cantiō est, inter Dubrās et Rutupiās situs. Dubrae et Rutupiae oppida antiqua sunt. Multa sunt monumenta antiqua in Britannia, multa vestigia Rōmānōrum. Reliquiae villarum, oppidorum, amphitheatrorum Rōmānōrum hodiē exstant. Multae viae Rōmānae in Britannia sunt. In Cantiō est via Rōmāna inter Rutupiās et Londinium. Solum Britannicum multōs numinōs aureōs, argenteōs, aēneōs et Britannōrum et Rōmānōrum occultat. Rusticis nummī saepe sunt causa lucrī,



NUMMUS ROMANUS CUM FIGURA BRITANNIAE.



NUMMUS ROMANUS.  
(C. IUL. CAESAR.) (AUGUSTUS.)



NUMMUS BRITANNICUS.



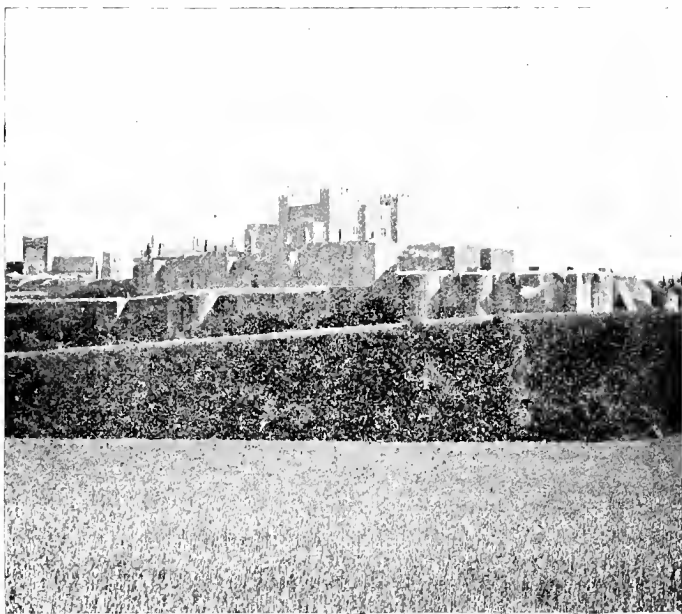
NUMMUS BRITANNICUS.

cum arant vel fundāmenta aedificiōrum antiqūōrum excavant. Nam nummōs antiqūōs magnō pretiō vēnumdant. Patruō meō magnus numerus est nummōrum Rōmānōrum.

10. Inter fēriās commentāriōs meōs dē vitā meā scriptitō. Dubrās saepe vīsītāmus ; nam oppidum nōn procul abest. Super oppidum est castellum magnum ; in castellō est specula antiq̄ua. Mūrī speculae altī et lātī sunt. Quondam erat pharus Rōmānōrum. Prope speculam est aedificium consecrātum. Iam secundō saeculō post Christum nātum basilica Christiāna erat.

11. Castellum in prōmunturiō ōrae maritimae stat. Post castellum sunt clīvī grāmineī et lātī. Ex castellō fretum Gallicum spectās. Ante oculōs sunt

vēla alba multōrum nāvigiorum ; nāvigia sunt Britannica, Francogallica, Germānica, Belgica. Nōnnulla ex nāvigiis Britannicis "castella" nōmināta sunt. Littera C in signō est. "Castella" in Africam Meridiānam nāvigant, ubi patria mea est.



CASTELLUM AD DUBRAS SITUM.

#### IV. Delectamenta puerorum.

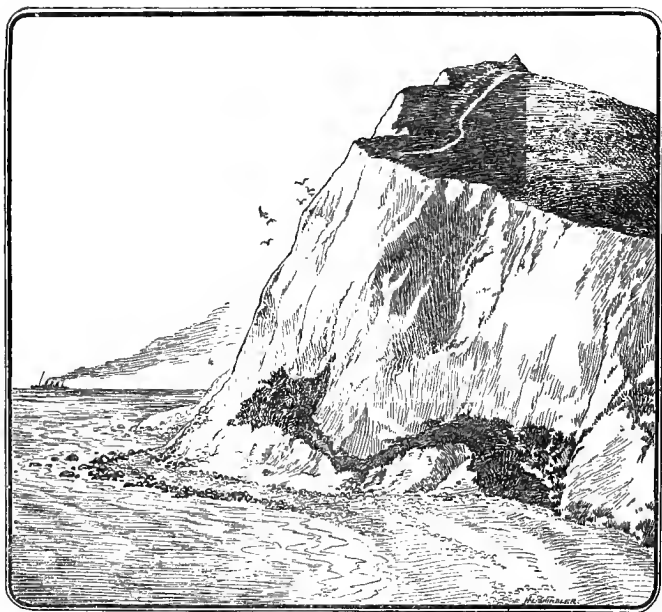
[Nouns and Adjectives like *puer*].

12. In numerō amīcōrum meōrum sunt duo puerī. Marcus, puer quattuordecim annōrum, mihi

praecipuus amīcus est. Prope Dubrās nunc habitant, sed ex Calēdoniā oriundī sunt. Nōbīs puerīs fēriae nunc sunt ; nam condiscipulī sumus. Inter fēriās liberī sumus scholīs. Amīcī meī mē saepe vīsitant, et ego amīcōs meōs vīsītō. Magna est inter nōs amīcitia. Ūnā anibulāmus, ūnā in undīs spūmiferīs natāmus, cum nōn nimis asperae sunt. Quantopere nōs puerōs lūdī pilārū in arēnā dēlectant ! Ut iuvat castella contrā undās spūmiferās aedificāre !

13. Nōbīs puerīs fēriae plēnae sunt gaudiōrum ā māne usque ad vesperum. Nōnnumquam in scaphā cum Petrō nāvigāmus. Petrus est adulescentulus vīgintī annōrum. Petrī scapha nōn solum rēmīs sed etiam vēlīs apta est. Plērumque rēmigāmus, sed nōnnumquam vēla damus, cum ventus nōn nimis asper est. Petrus scapham gubernat et vēlīs ministrat. Nōs puerī scapham bellam laudāmus et amāmus.

14. Nōn procul ā Dubrīs est scopulus altus, unde oceanum et nāvigia et ōram maritimam spectās. Locus in fābulā commemorātus est, ubi Leir, rēgulus Britannōrum antīquōrum, fortūnam suam miseram dēplōrat, stultitiam suam culpat, filiās suās animī ingrātī accūsāt. Ō fortūnam asperam ! Ō filiās impiās ! Ō constantiam Cordēliae ! Scopulus ex poētā nōminātus est. Nam in fābulā est locus ubi vir generōsus, amīcus fidus rēgulī, dē scopulō sē praecipitāre parat ; sed filius suus virum ex periculō servat. Filium fidum laudō et amō. Nōs puerī locum saepe vīsītāmus.



SCOPULUS ALTUS AD DUBRAS SITUS, EX POETA NOMINATUS.

### V. Magister noster.

[Nouns and Adjectives like *magister*].

15. Magister noster vir doctus est, sed lūdōrum perītus. Nōbīs puerīs cārus est. Inter fēriās patrum meum interdum vīsitat. Dextra magistrī nostrī valida est, et puerī pigrī nec dextram nec magistrum amant.

“Nōn amo tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē.

Hōc tantum possum dīcere : nōn amo tē.”

Magistrum nōn amant quia librōs Graecōs et Latinōs nōn amant. Nam discīpulī scholae nostrae linguīs antiquīs operam dant, atque scientiīs mathē-

maticīs. Magistrō nostrō magna cōpia est librōrum pulchrōrum. Schola nostra antīqua et clāra est : nōn solum librīs sed etiam lūdīs operam damus. Schola nostra nōn in Cantiō est. In vīcō nostrō est lūdus litterārius, crēber puerīs et puellīs, liberīs agricolārum. Sed ego cum Marcō et Alexandrō, amicīs meis, ad Ventam Belgārum discipulus sum.

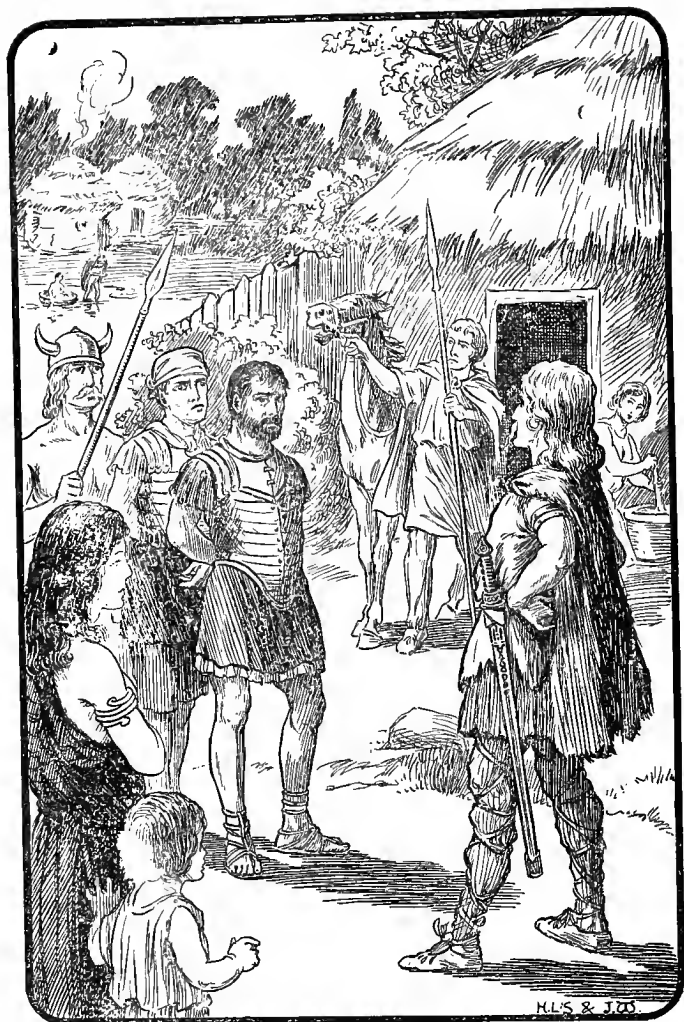
## VI. Britānnia antīqua.

[Mixed forms of Nouns and Adjectives of the 1st and 2nd Declensions, together with the Past Imperfect Indicative of *sum* and of the 1st Conjugation.]

16. Magister noster librōrum historicōrum studiōsus est ; dē patriā nostrā antīquā libenter narrat. Proximō annō, dum apud nōs erat, de vitā Britannōrum antīquōrum saepe narrābat. Patruus meus et amita mea libenter auscultābant ; ego quoque nōnnumquam aderam. Sic narrābat :—

“ Fere tōta Britannia quondam silvīs densīs crēbra erat. Inter ōram maritimam et fluvium Tamesam, ubi nunc agrī frūgiferī sunt, silva erat Anderida, locus vastus et incultus. Silvae plēnae erant ferārum—lupōrum, ursōrum, cervōrum, aprōrum. Multa et varia māteria erat in silvīs Britannicīs : sed fāgus Britannīs antīquīs nōn erat nōta, sī Gāius Iūlius vērā affirmat. Et pīnus Scōtica dēerat.”

17. “ Solum, ubi liberum erat silvīs, frūgiferum erat. Metallīs quoque multīs abundābat—plumbō albō



H.L.S. & J.W.

BRITANNI ANTIQUI



et ferrō, atque, ut Tacitus affirmat, aurō argentōque. Margarītās et ostreās dabat ōceanus: margarītae parvae erant, sed ostreae magnae et praeclārae. Caelum tum quoque crēbris pluviis et nebulis ātrīs foedum erat; sed pruīnae asperae aberant. Nātūra ōceanī ‘pigra’ erat, sī testimōnium Tacitī vērum est: nautae Rōmānī, inquit, in aquā pigrā vix poterant rēmigare. Sed vērumne est testimōnium? An nātūra nautārum Rōmānōrum nōn satis impigra erat?”

18. “Incolae antīquī insulae nostrae ferī et bellicōsī erant. Hastis, sagittis, essedīs inter sē pugnābant. Proelia Britannōs antīquōs dēlectābant. Multī et dīversī erant populī Britannōrum. Multī ex populis erant Celtae. Celtis antīquīs, sicut Germānīs, capillī flāvī, oculī caeruleī, membra magna et rōbusta erant. Sic Tacitus dē Calēdoniīs narrat. Incolae Cambriae merīdiānae ‘colōrātī’ erant. Sed Rōmānīs statūra parva, oculī et capillī nigrī erant. Ūniversī Britannī, ut Gāius Iūlius affirmat, membra vitrō colōrābant, sicut nautae nostrī hodiernī. Vestimenta ex coriīs ferārum constābant. In casīs parvis circum silvās suās habitābant.”

19. Hīc amita mea “Nōnne in oppidīs habitābant?” inquit. Et ille “Oppida aedificābant,” inquit “sed, sī Gāius Iūlius vēra affirmat, oppida Britannōrum antīquōrum loca firmāta erant, nōn loca ubi habitābant. Sed Britannia merīdiāna crēbra erat incolīs et aedificiīs. Sic narrat Caesar in librō quintō Belli Gallicī. Multī ūnā habitābant, ut putō.” “Itaque nōn plānē barbarī erant,” inquit amita mea. Et

ille: "Incolae Cantii agrī cultūrae operam dabant, atque etiam mercātūrae. Nam Venetī ex Galliā in Britanniam mercātūrae causā nāvigābant. Britannī frūmentum, armenta, aurum, argentum, ferrum, coria, catulōs vēnaticōs, servōs et captivōs exportābant; frēna, vitrea, gemmās, cētera importābant. Itaque mediocriter hūmānī erant, nec multum dīversī ā Gallīs.'



URNAE ET CATENAE BRITANNICAE.



DRUIDAE BRITANNICI.

20. "Multī mortuōs cremābant, sicut Graeci et Rōmānī: exstant in Cantiō sepulchra cum urnīs pulchrē ornātīs. Exstant etiam nummī Britannicī, aureī, argenteī, aēneī. Esseda quoque fabricābant: nōn plānē inhūmānī erant, sī rotās ferrātās essedōrum et nummōs aureōs aēneōsque fabricāre poterant. Britannīs antīquīs magnus numerus gallōrum gallīnarūque erat; animī, nōn escae, causā cūrābant, ut Gāius Iūlius affirmat. Sed incolae mediterrāneōrum et Calēdoniī ferī et barbarī erant. Mortuōs humābant. Agrī cultūrae operam nōn dabant; nōn frūmentō sed ferīnā victitābant. Deōrum fāna in lūcīs sacrīs et silvīs ātrīs erant. Sacra cūrābant Druidae. Sacra erant saeva: virōs, fēminās, liberōs prō victimīs sacrificābant. Inter sē saepe pugnābant; captīvōs miserōs vēnumdabant, vel cruciābant et trucidābant: nōnnumquam simulācra magna, plēna victimīs hūmānīs, cremābant. Populōrum inter sē discordiae victōriam Rōmānōrum parābant."

## VII. Vestigia Romanorum.

[Future Indicative and Imperative of *sum* and of the 1st Conjugation].

21. Nūper, dum Marcus et Alexander mēcum erant, patruō meō "Quantopere mē dēlectābit" inquam "locum vīsītāre ubi oppidum Rōmānum quondam stābat." Et Alexander "Monstrā nōbīs," inquit "amābō tē, ruīnās castellī Rutupīnī." Tum patruus meus "Longa est via," inquit "sed aliquandō monstrābō. Crās, sī vōbīs grātum erit, ad locum ubi proelium erat Britannōrum cum Rōmānīs ambul-

ābimus. Ambulābitisne nōbīscum, Marce et Alexander?" "Ego vērō" inquit Marcus "tēcum libenter ambulābō"; et Alexander "Mihi quoque pergrātum erit, sī nōbīs sepulchra Britannōrum et Rōmānōrum monstrābis." Sed patruus meus "Festīnā lentē" inquit; "nullae sunt ibi reliquiae sepulchrōrum, et virī doctī dē locō proeliī disputant. Sed quotā horā parātī eritis?" "Quintā hōrā" inquiunt.

22. Postrīdiē caelum serēnum erat. Inter ientāculum amita mea "Quotā hōrā" inquit "in viam vōs dabitīs? et quotā hōrā cēnāre poteritis?" Et patruus meus "Quintā hōrā Marcus et Alexander Dubrīs adventābunt; intrā duās hōrās ad locum proeliī ambulāre poterimus; post ūnam hōram redambulābimus; itaque hōrā decimā vel undecimā domī erimus, ut spērō." Tum ego "Nōne ieiūnī erimus," inquam "sī nihil ante vesperum gustābimus?" "Prandium vōbīscum portāte" inquit amita mea; "ego crustula et pōma cūrābō."

---

[Perfect Indicative of *sum* and of the 1st Conjugation.]

23. Quinta hora appropinquābat, et amicōs meōs cupidē exspectābam. Ad sonum tintinnābulī ad fenestram properāvī. Ecce, puerī ad iānuam aderant. Cum intrāvērunt, ūniversī exclāmāvimus "Eugē! Opportūnē adventāvistis!" Tum Marcus "Num sērō adventāvimus?" inquit; "hōra fere tertia fuit cum in viam nōs dedimus; sed via longa est, et Alexander celeriter ambulāre nōn potest." Sed Alexander "Nōn sum fatīgātus" inquit; "sed quota

hōra est?" Tum patruus meus "Nōdum quinta hōra est" inquit: "parātīne estis ad ambulandum?" Et Alexander "Nōs vērō!" inquit. Tum amita mea et Lȳdia "Bene ambulāte!" inquant, et in viam nōs dedimus.



C. IULIUS CAESAR.

24. Inter viam patruus meus multa nōbīs dē bellō Rōmānōrum cum Britannīs narrāvit. Prīmō saeculō ante Christum nātum Gāius Iūlius in Galliā bellābat, et, postquam Nervīōs cēterōsque populōs Galliae Belgicae dēbellāvit, bellum contrā incolās insulae propinquae parāvit. Itaque annō quintō et quinquāgēsīmō cōpiās suās in Britanniam transportāvit.

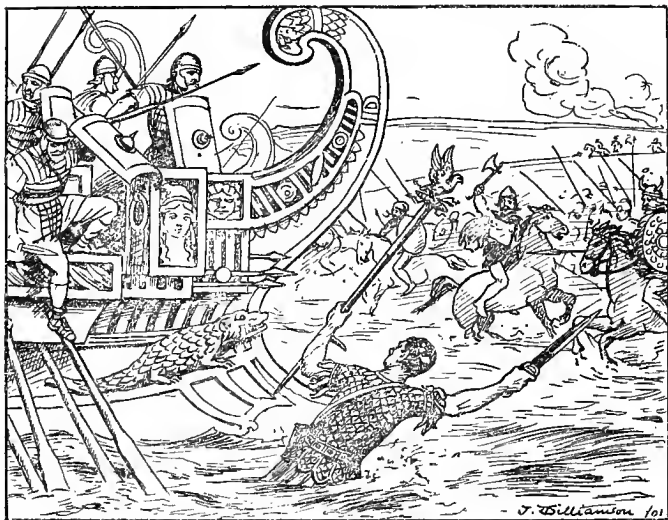
Dē locō unde nāvigāvit et dē locō quō nāvigia sua applicāvit, virī doctī diū disputāverunt. Sed inter Dubrās et Rutupiās est locus ad nāvigia applicanda idōneus. Dubrās nōn poterat applicāre; nam scopulī ibi altī erant, ut nunc sunt, et in scopulīs cōpiae armātae Britannōrum stābant. Itaque ad alium locum nāvigāvit, ubi nullī scopulī fuērunt. Sed Britannī quoque per ōram maritimam ad locum properāverunt, et ad pugnam sē parāverunt. Rōmānīs necesse erat nāvigia sua magna ad ancorās dēligāre. Britannīs vada nōta fuērunt; itaque in aquam equitāverunt et cōpiam pugnae dedērunt.



BRITANNI ROMANOS IN SCOPULIS EXPECTANT.

[Pluperfect (*i.e.* Past Perfect) Indicative of *sum* and of the 1st Conjugation.]

25. Sed iam ad locum adventāverāmus, et patruus meus "Spectāte puerī" inquit; "hīc campus apertus est; scopulī dēsunt, et locus idōneus est ad cōpiās explicandās. Illīc fortasse, ubi scaphās piscātōriās spectātis, Gāius Iūlius nāvigia Rōmāna ad ancorās dēligāverat. Hīc Britannī cōpiās suās collocāverant, et equōs in aquam incitāverant. Nōne potestis tōtam pugnam animō spectāre? Sed reliqua narrābō. Dum Rōmānī undīs sē dare dubitant, aquilifer 'Ad aquilam vōs congregāte,' inquit 'nisi ignāvī estis. Ego certē officium meum praestābō.'



AQUILIFER SE UNDIS DAT.



Et cum aquilā undīs sē dedit. Iam ūniversī Rōmānī ad aquiliferum sē congregāverant, et cum Britannīs in undīs impigrē pugnābant. Confūsa et aspera fuit pugna. Prīmō labōrābant Rōmānī ; sed tandem Britannōs prōpulsāvērunt et terram occupāvērunt. Ante vesperum Britannī sē fugae dederant. Numquam antea cōpiae Rōmānae in solō Britannicō steterant. Audācia aquiliferī laudanda erat.”

---

[Future Perfect Indicative of *sum* and of the 1st Conjugation.]

26. Sed nōs puerī prandium iam postulābāmus : nam hōra iam septima erat. Quam bella crustula et pōma tū, amita, dederās ! Quantopere nōs bācae rubrae et nigrae dēlectāvērunt ! Tum patruus meus “ Cum nōs recreāverimus,” inquit “ domum properābimus ; nam nōn ante undecimam hōram adventāverimus ; intereā amita tua, mī Antōnī, nōs expectāverit. Nōne prandiō satiātī estis ? ” Tum ego “ Nulla in mē mora fuerit.” Et Alexander “ Ego iam parātus sum ” inquit ; “ sed quandō tū, Marce, satiātus eris ? ” Tum Marcus “ Iēiūnus fuī ” inquit ; “ nam per quinque hōrās nihil gustāveram. Sed cum mē alterō pōmō recreāverō, parātus erō. Tū, Alexander, inter viam crustulīs operam dedistī ; nam puer parvus es.” Nōs cachinnāmus, et mox in viam nōs damus.

## VIII. Expeditio prima C. Iulii Caesaris.

[3rd Declension : nouns like *Caesar*, *imperator*, *sōl*, *expeditiō*.]

27. Sed magnus erat calor sōlis et āeris, neque poterāmus celeriter ambulāre. Paulō post nebulae sōlem obscurāvērunt, et imber magnus fuit. Mox

sōl ōram maritimam splendōre suō illustrāvit, et iterum in viam nōs dedimus. Imber calōrem āeris temperāverat ; et inter viam nōs puerī patruum meum multa dē C. Iūliō Caesare, imperātōre magnō Rōmānōrum, interrogāvimus. “Cūr expeditiōnem suam in Britanniam parāvit?” inquit ; “cūr cōpiās suās in insulam nostram transportāvit?” Et patruus meus “C. Iūlius Caesar” inquit “prōconsul erat Galliae, et per trēs annōs contrā nātiōnēs bellicōsās Gallōrum et Belgārum bellāverat ; nam annō duodēsexāgēsimo ante Christum nātum Rōmānī Caesarem prōconsulem creāverant. Rōmānī autēm Britannōs in numerō Gallōrum esse existimābant ; et rēvērā nōnullae ex nātiōnibus Britanniae merīdiānae ā Belgīs oriundae erant. Atque Britannī Gallīs auxilia contrā Rōmānōs interdum subministrāverant ; sed Trinobantēs auxilium Rōmānōrum contrā Cassivellaunum, rēgulum Cassōrum, implorāverant.”

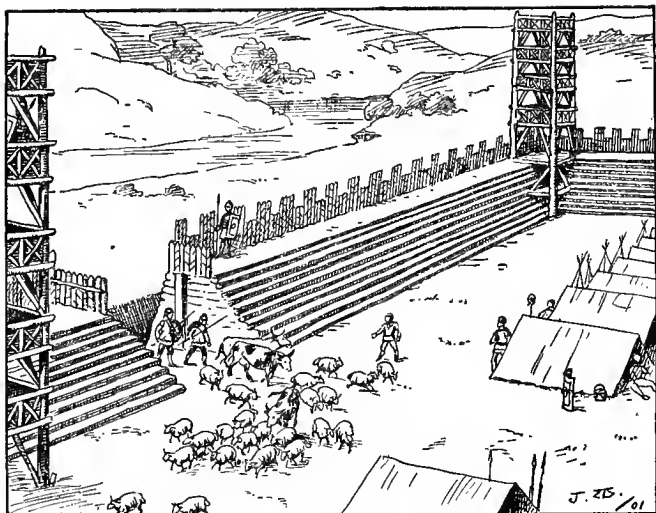
28. “Alia quoque causa bellī fuerat avāritia et exspectātiō praedae. Cupidī erant Rōmānī insulam nostram ignōtam et remōtam vīsītandī et explōrandī ; nam, ut Tacitus affirmat, ignōtum prō magnificō est. Itaque annō quintō et quinquāgēsimo ante Christum nātum C. Iūlius Caesar expeditiōnem suam prīmam contrā Britannōs comparāvit, et victōriam reportāvit, ut narrāvi ; nam post ūnum proelium Britannī veniam ā victōribus implorāvērunt. Sed expeditiō nōn magna fuerat ; neque Rōmānī ullam praedam ex Britannia reportāverant, nisi paucōs servōs et captīvōs. Annō igitur proximō imperātor Rōmānus secundam et

multō māiorem expeditiōnem in Britanniam parāvit. Nam sescenta nāvigia onerāria in Galliā aedificāvit, et quinque legiōnēs Rōmānās unā cum magnā multitudīne auxiliōrum Gallicōrum in ōram Belgicam congregāvit."

## IX. Pax violata.

[3rd Declension continued : nouns like *pāx*, *aestās*, *mīles*.]

29. "Britannī pācem nōn violāverant, sed Rōmāni pācis nōn cupidī erant. Itaque aestāte annī quartī et quinquāgēsīmī ante Christum nātum dux Rōmānus cum quinque legiōnibus mīlitum Rōmānōrum et magnō numerō equitum et auxiliōrum Gallicōrum iterum in Britanniam nāvīgāvit. Tempestās erat idōnea, sed in mediā nāvīgātiōne ventus nōn iam flābat ; itaque mīlitibus necesse erat nāvigia rēmīs incitāre. Impigrē rēmīgāvērunt, et postrīdiē nāvigia ad ōram Britannicā prosperē applicāvērunt. Labor rēmīgandī magnus erat, virtūs mīlitum magnopere laudāda. Britannī Rōmānōs in scopulīs ōrae maritimae exspectābant ; sed postquam multitudinē nāvigiōrum et mīlitum equitumque spectāvērunt, in fugam sē dedērunt. Caesar nāvigia sua inter Dubrās et Rutupiās applicāvit, ut putō, nōn prōcul ā locō quō priōre annō applicāverat. Inde contrā Britannōs properāvit. Intēreā unam legiōnem cum trecentīs equitibus ad castra in statiōne reservābat : nam periculōsum erat nāvigia ad ancorās dēligāta dēfensōribus nūdāre."



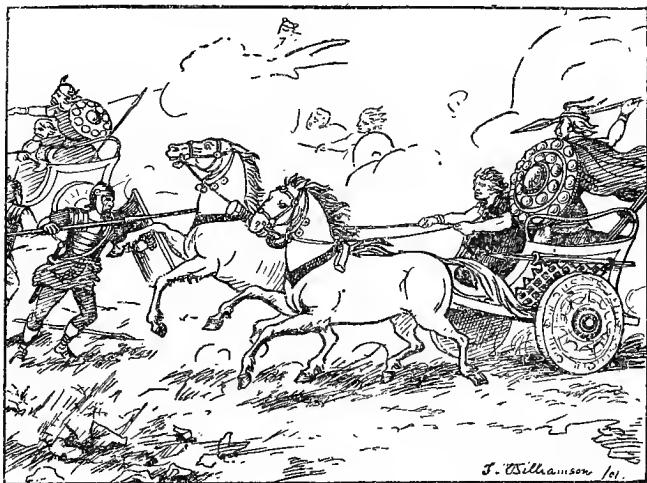
CASTRA ROMANA.

## X. Certamina varia.

[3rd Declension continued : nouns like *flūmen*, *tempus*.]

30. “Britannī certāmen vitāvērunt, et in silvīs sē occultāvērunt, ubi locus erat prope flūmen, ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere firmātus. Itaque ‘oppidum’ Britannicum erat. Dē nōmine flūminis nihil constat. Oppidum iam ante domesticī bellī causā praeparāverant, et crēbrīs arboribus vallisque firmāverant. Multa et varia certamina fuērunt: Britannī ex silvīs cum equitibus essedisque suīs contrā Rōmānōs prōvolābant; Rōmānīs periculōsum erat intrā mūnitiōnēs Britannōrum intrāre. Sed post aliquantum

temporis milites septimae legionis aggere et testudine locum oppugnauerunt. Tandem Britannos ex silvis propulsauerunt. Pauca erant vulnera Romanorum: nam Romani Britannos pondere armorum et scientia pugnandi multum superabant; magnitudine et robore corporis Britanni Romanos superabant. Sed Romani quoque homines robusto corpore erant."



ESSEDUM BRITANNICUM.

31. "Victoria Caesaris non multum profuit: nam Britannis fugatis instare non poterat, quia naturam loci ignorabat. Praeterea praefectus castrorum, nomine Quintus Atrius, magnum incommodum nuntiaverat: tempestas navigia in litore afflictaverat. Tempus periculosum erat; nam Caesaris necesse erat a flumine

ad lītus maritimum properāre, et legiōnēs suās ab insectātiōne Britannōrum revocāre. Multa ex nāvigiis in vadīs afflictāta erant; cētera novīs armīs ornanda erant. Opus magnī labōris erat, et aliquantum temporis postulābat. Sed nautārum atque mīlitum virtūs magnō opere laudanda erat. Nōn solum per diurna sed etiam per nocturna tempora labōrāvērunt. Intereā Caesar nova nāvigia in Galliā aedificat: sine nāvigiis nōn poterat cōpiās suās in Galliam reportāre; ūnō tempore necesse erat et nāvigia reparāre et contrā Britannōs bellāre.”

## XI. Naves Romanae.

[3rd Declension continued : nouns like *nāvis*.]

32. “Duo erant genera nāvium in classe Rōmānā; ūnum erat genus nāvium longārum, alterum nāvium onerāriarum. Nāvēs longae ad pugnam aptae erant, nāvēs onerāriae ad onera atque multitudinem hominum et equōrum transportanda. Tōta classis Caesaris octingentārum erat nāvium; nam sescentās nāvēs onerāriās per hiemem in Galliā aedificāverat, ut narrāvī. Inter cēterās, ducentās numerō, nōnnullae nāvēs longae erant. Sed nāvibus longīs rēvērā nōn opus erat Caesarī; nam Britannīs antīquīs nulla erat classis; neque nāvēs onerāriās aedificābant.” Tum ego “Britannia nōndum domina undārum erat” inquam; “sed quōmodō frūmentum exportāre poterant, sī nullās nāvēs aedificābant?” “Venetōrum nāvēs” inquit patruus meus “frūmentum Britannicum in Galliam portābant, et ex Galliā

gemmās, vitrea, cētera in Britanniam. Nam Venetī, nātiō maritima, in ōrā Gallicā habitābant. Hostēs fuerant Rōmānōrum, et magnam classem comparāverant.”

33. Tum Marcus “Num nātiōnēs barbarae” inquit “nāvēs longās ornāre poterant?” Et patruus meus “Formam nāvium Gallicārum Caesar in tertiō librō Belli Gallicī commemorat. Puppēs altae erant, ad magnitudinem tempestātum accommodātae; carīnae plānae. Venetī nāvēs tōtās ex rōbore fabricābant; ad ancorās catēnīs ferreīs, nōn fūnibus, dēligābant. Pellēs prō vēlīs erant, sive propter līnī inopiam, sive quia in pellibus plūs firmitūdinis quam in vēlīs līneīs erat. Nāvēs longae Rōmānōrum nōn tam altae erant quam Venetōrum, sed rostrīs ferreīs et interdum turribus armātae erant; itaque victōriam a Venetīs reportāverant.” Tum Alexander “Num nāvēs Rōmānae lāminīs ferreīs armātae erant?” inquit. Sed Marcus: “Quid opus erat lāminīs ferreīs, si tormenta hodierna antīquīs dēerant?”



## XII. Gentium Britannicarum Societas.

[3rd Declension continued : nouns like *gens*, *pars*].

34. Tum patruus meus reliqua de expeditiōne Caesaris narrāvit. “Dum milītēs nautaeque Rōmānī classem novīs armīs ornant, Caesar ad reliquās copiās properat. Intereā hostēs summum imperium Cassivellaunō mandāverant. Cassivellaunus nōn erat rēx ūniversārum gentium Britannicārum, sed dux vel princeps gentis Cassōrum. Annō tamen quartō et quinquāgēsīmō ante Christum nātum magna pars gentium Britanniae merīdiānae sē sub Cassivellaunō contrā Rōmānōs consociāverant. Flūmen Tamesa finēs Cassivellaunī ā finibus gentium maritimārum sēparābat; ab oriente erant finēs Trinobantium; ab occidente Britannī mediterrāneī. Superiōre tempore bella continua fuerant inter Cassivellaunum et reliquās gentēs; atque Trinobantēs auxilium Rōmānōrum contrā Cassivellaunum implōrāverant, quia rēgem suum trucīdāverat. Numerus hostium magnus erat; nam, ut Caesar affirmat, infīnīta multitūdō hominum erat in parte merīdiānā Britanniae.”

35. “Caesar formam et incolās Britanniae in capite duodecimō et tertiō decimō librī quintī commemorat. Incolae partis interiōris Celtae et barbarī erant; incolae maritimae partis ex Belgiō praedae causā immigrāverant, sicut priōre aetāte trans flūmen Rhēnum in Belgium migrāverant. Et nōnnulla nōmina gentium maritimārum, unde nōmina urbium hodiernārum dērivāta sunt, Belgica vel Gallica sunt.



Belgae autem ā Germānīs oriundī erant, ut Caesar in capite quartō librī secundī dēmonstrat. Itaque pars Britannōrum antīquōrum Germānicā orīgine erant. Formam insulae esse triquetram dēclārat. Sed ūnum latus ad Galliam spectāre existimat, alterum ad Hispāniam atque occidentem, tertium ad septentriōnēs. Itaque dē lateribus et angulīs laterum errābat. Hiberniam ab occidente parte Britanniae esse rectē iūdicat, insulam Mōnam inter Britanniam et Hiberniam esse.”

### XIII. *María Británnica.*

[3rd Declension continued : nouns like *mare*].

36. “Lateris prīmī longitūdinem circiter quingenta mīlia esse iūdicat, secundī septingenta, tertiū octingenta. Itaque dē magnitūdine insulae nōn multum errābat. Flūmen Tamesam ā marī circiter octōgintā mīlia distāre iūdicat.” Hīc nōs puerī “Errābat igitur” inquit; “nam inter Londinium et mare nōn sunt octōgintā mīlia.” Sed patruus meus “Rectē iūdicābat” inquit; “nam pars maris ubi Caesaris castra erant circiter octōgintā mīlia Rōmāna ā Londiniō distat. Triā maria insulam nostram circumdant; inter Britanniam et Galliam est mare Britannicum vel fretum Gallicum; ab occidente mare Hibernicum; ab oriente mare Germānicum. Nōmina marium temporibus antīquīs nōn ūsitāta erant; sed iam Graecī Britanniam esse insulam iūdicābant.”

### XIV. *Británnia pacata.*

[Recapitulation of nouns of the 3rd Declension.]

37. “Inter Tamesam et mare Britannicum prīma

concurſiō erat Rōmānōrum cum cōpiīs Cassivellaunī. Britannī duās cohortēs Rōmānās in itinere fortiter impugnāvērunt. Ex ſilvīs ſuīs prōvolāvērunt ; Rōmānōs in fugam dedērunt ; multōs Rōmānōrum trucidāvērunt. Tum ſuōs ā pugnā revocāvērunt. Novum genus pugnae Rōmānōs perturbāverat. Nam Britannīs nōn mōs erat iustō proeliō pugnāre ; sed equitibus esſedīsque ſuīs per omnēs partēs equitābant, et ordinēs hostium perturbābant ; tum consultō cōpiās suās revocābant. Esſedāriī interdum pedibus pugnābant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestābant. Peditēs Rōmānī propter pondus armōrum nōn aptī erant ad hūiusmodī hostem.



BRITANNI CUM ROMANIS IN ITINERE PUGNANT.

Et equitibus Rōmānīs periculōsum erat sē longō intervallō ā peditibus sēparāre: neque pedibus pugnāre poterant.”

38. “Itaque Rōmānī ordinēs suōs contrā equitēs Britannōrum in primō certāmine nōn servāverant.

Sed postrīdiē Rōmānī victōriam reportāverunt. Britannī in collibus procul ā castrīs Rōmānīs stābant. Caesar magnum numerum cohortium et ūniversōs equitēs lēgātō suō Trebōniō mandāverat. Hostēs subitō prōvolāverunt, et ordinēs Rōmānōs impugnāverunt. Sed Rōmānī superiōrēs fuērunt. Cōpiās Britannicās prōpulsāverunt, et in fugam dedērunt. Magnum numerum hostium trucidāverunt. Tum dux continuīs itineribus ad flūmen Tamesam et in finēs Cassivellaunī properāvit. Cassivellaunus autem cum quattuor milibus essedāriōrum itinera Rōmānōrum servābat, et paulum dē viā dēclinābat sēque in silvīs occultābat. Interdum ex silvīs prōvolābat et cum militibus Rōmānīs pugnābat; Rōmānī autem agrōs Britannōrum vastābant.”

39. “In parte flūminis Tamesae ubi finēs Cassivellaunī erant ūnum tantum vadum erat. Quō cum Caesar adventāvit, cōpiās hostium ad alteram rīpam flūminis collocātās spectāvit. Rīpa autem sudibus acūtīs firmāta erat; et Britannī multās sudēs sub aquā quoque occultāverant. Sed Caesar hostibus instāre nōn dubitāvit. Aqua flūminis profunda erat, et milites capite solum ex aquā exstābant; sed Rōmānī sē aquae

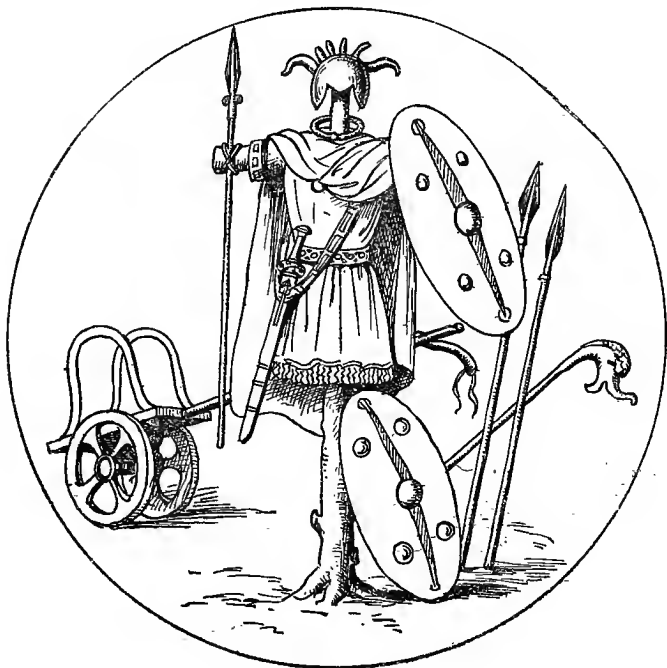
fortiter mandāvērunt, et Britannōs in fugam dedērunt. ‘Oppidum’ Cassivellaunī nōn longē aberat, inter silvās palūdēsq̄ue situm, quō Britannī magnum numerum hominum, equōrum, ovium, boum, congregāverant. Locum ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere firmātum Caesar ex duābus partibus oppugnāre properāvit: oppidum expugnāvit et dēfensōrēs fugāvit.”



BRITANNI CASTRA ROMANA OPPUGNANT.

40. “Sed in Cantiō, ubi quattuor rēgēs Britannīs praeerant, nōndum finis erat pugnandī. Britannī castra Rōmāna ad mare sita fortiter oppugnant; sed frustrā. Rōmānī victōrēs. Intereā multae ex civitātibus Britannicīs pācem ōrant. Trinobantibus Caesar

novum rēgem dat, et pācem confirmat. Itaque propter tot clādēs, propter finēs suōs bellō vastātōs, maximē autem propter dēfectiōnem tot cīvitatū, Cassivellaunus dē condiōnibus pācis dēliberat. Caesar pācem dat; Cassivellaunum vetat Trinobantēs bellō vexāre, et tribūtum Britannīs imperat. Tum cōpiās suās cum magnō numerō obsidum et captīvōrum in Galliam reportat. Britannī fortiter sed frustrā prō ārīs et focīs suis pugnāverant.”

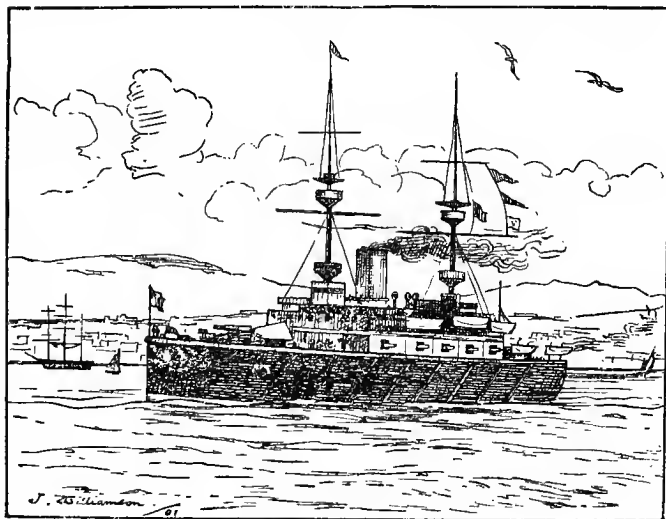


TROPÆUM BRITANNICUM.

## XV. Robur et aes triplex.

[Adjectives of the 3rd Declension.]

41. Tum Marcus "ō gentem fortem et admirābilem Britannōrum!" inquit. "Nam insigne erat facinus quod contrā Rōmānōs, victōrēs orbis terrārum, tam fortiter et nōnnumquam prosperē pugnāvērunt. Nōn mīrum est, sī Rōmānī victōriam reportāvērunt." Nōs sententiam Marcī comprobāvimus. Sed iam nōna hōra erat, cum Alexander, digitō ad orientem monstrans, "Nōne nāvēs procul ā litore spectātis?" inquit. Et patruus meus "Ita est" inquit; "nam illīc est statīō tūta nāvibus. Sed illae nāvēs, ut putō, nāvēs longae sunt ex classe Britannicā; nam pars classis nostrae



NAVIS LONGA BRITANNICA.

nunc in fretō Gallicō est. Tum ego “eugē, optimē!” inquam; “nāvem longam adhūc nōn spectāvi. Sed nōn tam grandēs sunt quam putāvi.” “Pergrandēs sunt,” inquit patruus meus “sed procul a litore sunt; omnēs lāminīs ferreīs, nōnnullae arietibus vel turribus armātae sunt.”

42. Tum nautam veterānum dē nōminibus nāvi-um longārum interrogāvimus. In classe Britannicā militāverat, sed tum militiā vacābat, et custōs erat ōrae maritimae. Nōmina nāvium, ut affirmābat, erant *Grandis, Rēgālis, Magnifica, Tonans, Arrogans, Ferox*; omnibus tegimen erat lāminīs ferreīs fabricātum. In *Grandi* praefectus classis nāvigābat. Omnēs ad ancoram dēligātae erant. Tum Alexander “Cūr nōn” inquit “ad nāvēs in scaphā nāvigāmus?” Mihi et Marcō prōpositum pergrātum erat; et nauta ad nāvigandum parātus erat. Itaque patruus meus “Sērō domum adventābimus” inquit; “sed sī vōs puerī cupidī estis nāvem longam spectandī, ego nōn dēnegābō.” Tum nauta “Exspectāte” inquit “dum omnia parō”; et vēla rēmōsque in scapham portāvit. Quam dulce erat in marī tranquillō nāvigāre! Ventus lēnis flābat, et brevī tempore ad *Rēgālem* appropinquāvimus. Tum classiārīi nōbīs nāvem ingentem monstrāverunt cum māchinīs, tormentīs, rostrīs, cēterīs.

43. Hōra iam decima erat cum ā *Rēgālī* nōs in scapham dedimus. Tum ad litus rēmigāre necesse erat; nam ventus adversus erat. Ego et Marcus unā cum patruō meō et nautā veterānō rēmīs labōrāvimus.

Sed nōn ante undecimam hōram in lītore stetimus. Dum domum properāmus, imber fuit, et necesse erat in tabernā aliquantum temporis exspectāre: intrāvimus et nōs recreāvimus; nam fatīgātī erāmus. Sed ‘post tenebrās lūx.’ Cum domum adventāvimus, amita mea et Lȳdia “Ubi tam diū fuistis?” inquirunt; “nōs anxiae fuimus; sed cēna iam parāta est.” Tum nōs “Multa spectāvimus” inquam; “ambulātiō longa sed pergrāta et ūtilis fuit.” Post cēnam Marcus et Alexander Dubrās in vehiculō properāvērunt. Ego per noctem de Britannīs antiquīs et dē classe Britanicā hodiernā somniāvī. Ante oculōs erant virī fortēs membrīs robustīs, flāvīs capillīs, oculīs caeruleīs cum Rōmānīs terrā marīque pignantēs.

### DULCE DOMUM.



DEUS SALVAM FAC REGINAM,  
MATREM PATRIAE.



## PREPARATIONS

NOTE TO THE TEACHER ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF WORDS. If the last syllable but one of a word of more than two syllables is *long*, it is also accented: if *short*, the accent is thrown back on to the last syllable but two. But words of only two syllables are always accented on the first of the two.

Syllables closed by two or more consonants are mostly long, as in *viLLa*, *luSCinia*, *iNTeRDum*, *paRTem*, *uMBRa*, *feneSTRa*; so too are syllables containing a double vowel, as in *nAUtAE*. But many syllables ending in a single consonant and containing a single vowel are also long, because the vowel is itself a *long vowel*: these vowels are marked in the text and vocabularies of this book. Thus *beata* and *antiqua* have the middle syllable long, and are therefore marked *beāta*, *antīqua*: and it is because the middle syllable in each of these words has a long vowel in it that it is accented (*beāta*, *antīqua*). Vowels which do not bear any mark may be regarded as short, as in *domina*, *amīta*, *casa*, *quoque*, *mea*, *tua* (accented *dōmina*, *āmita*, *cāsa*, *quóque*, *méa*, *túa*).

In the Drill Exercises and Appendices (pp. 101-144) the quantities of the long vowels are not marked, except for some special reason (e.g. in order to distinguish the ablative singular of the 1st declension from the nominative singular). These pages will provide an opportunity of testing how far the ear of the pupil has been trained by the study of the text.

## I. The Sea Coast.

[English words connected with the Latin by origin, but not intended as translations of them, are given in square brackets and Roman type.]

## § I.

|               |                             |             |                                    |
|---------------|-----------------------------|-------------|------------------------------------|
| quam bella    | <i>how beautiful</i>        | villae      | <i>of the country-house</i>        |
| est           | <i>is</i>                   | ārea        | <i>an open space</i> [area]        |
| ōra maritima  | <i>the sea-shore</i>        | in āreā     | <i>in the open space</i>           |
| nōn procul    | <i>not far</i>              | castanea    | <i>a chestnut-tree</i>             |
| ab ōrā marit- |                             | ubi         | <i>where</i>                       |
| imā           | <i>from the sea-shore</i>   | lusciniā    | <i>a nightingale</i>               |
| villa         | <i>a country-house</i>      | interdum    | <i>sometimes</i>                   |
|               | [villa]                     | cantat      | <i>sings</i>                       |
| in villā      | <i>in the country-house</i> | sub umbrā   | <i>under the shade</i>             |
| amita mea     | <i>my aunt</i>              |             | (umbra, shade ;<br>cf. 'umbrella') |
| habitat       | <i>dwells, lives</i>        | castaneae   | <i>of the chestnut-tree</i>        |
| et            | <i>and</i>                  | ancilla     | <i>a maid-servant</i>              |
| ego habitō    | <i>I dwell, I am</i>        | cēnam parat | <i>prepares supper</i>             |
|               | <i>staying</i>              | amō ōram    | <i>I love the shore</i>            |
| cum amitā meā | <i>with my aunt</i>         | amō villam  | <i>I love the pretty</i>           |
| nunc          | <i>now</i>                  | bellam      | <i>country-house</i>               |
| ante iānuam   | <i>before the door</i>      |             |                                    |

Compare the different forms of the same word (Singular Number) in the following sentences :

Villa bella est. *There is a pretty country-house, or The country-house is pretty.*

Villam bellam amō. *I love the pretty country-house.*

Iānuā villae bellae est aperta. *The door of the pretty country-house is open.*

In villā bellā habitō. *I am staying in the pretty country-house.*

NOTE. ego habitō, *I am staying* (where the word *I* has some stress) ; amō, *I love* (where the word *I* has no stress.)

## § 2.

|                   |  |                     |                               |
|-------------------|--|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| fēriae            | <i>holidays</i>                        | incolae             | <i>the inhabitants</i>        |
| sunt              | <i>are or there are</i>                | nautae              | <i>sailors</i>                |
| fēriae nunc sunt  | <i>it is now the holidays</i>          | magna est           | <i>great is (or is great)</i> |
| inter fēriās      | <i>during the holidays</i>             | audācia             | <i>the courage</i>            |
| in villā maritimā | <i>in the country-house by the sea</i> | nautārum            | <i>of sailors</i>             |
| ō beātās fēriās ! | <i>oh, the happy holidays !</i>        | procellās formidant | <i>they fear storms</i>       |
| in arēnā          | <i>on the sand</i>                     | nautās amō          | <i>I like sailors</i>         |
| ōrae maritimae    | <i>of the sea coast</i>                | ut                  | <i>as</i>                     |
| ancorae           | <i>anchors</i>                         | nautae              | <i>sailors</i>                |
| et                | <i>and</i>                             | mē amant            | <i>like me</i>                |
| catēnae           | <i>chains</i>                          | cum nautis          | <i>with the sailors</i>       |
| nam               | <i>for</i>                             | in scaphis          | <i>in boats</i>               |
|                   |  |                     | [skiffs]                      |
|                   |  | nāvigō              | <i>I sail</i> [navigate]      |

Compare the forms of the Plural 'nautae,' *sailors*, in the above sentences : nautae mē amant, *sailors like me* ; nautās amō, *I like sailors* ; audācia nautārum, *the courage of sailors* ; cum nautis, *with sailors*. Note that the ending -ae, like the English -s, has two different meanings : nautae = (1) *sailor's*, (2) *sailors*.

Compare the different forms of the same word (Plural Number) in the following sentences :

Villae bellae sunt. *There are pretty country-houses, or The country-houses are pretty.*

Villās bellās amō. *I love pretty country-houses.*

Iānuae villārum bellārum sunt apertae. *The doors of the pretty country-houses are open.*

In villis bellis habitant. *They dwell in pretty country-houses.*

## § 3.

|                  |   |              |                                   |
|------------------|---|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| ex fenestris     | <i>out of (or from)<br/>the windows</i>                       | nōs dēlectat | <i>delights us</i>                |
| undās spectās    | <i>thou seest (you<br/>see) the waves</i>                     | ō cōpiam     | <i>oh the abund-<br/>ance</i>     |
| caeruleās        | <i>blue</i>   | plantārum    | <i>of plants</i>                  |
| quam magnae sunt | <i>how big they<br/>are (i.e. the<br/>waves, und-<br/>ae)</i> | herbārum     | <i>of grasses, of<br/>herbs</i>   |
| per-lūcidae      | <i>transparent<br/>[lucid]</i>                                | bācārum      | <i>of berries</i>                 |
| post cēnam       | <i>after supper</i>   | nōn solum    | <i>not only [solely]</i>          |
| lūnam spectō     | <i>I see the moon</i>   | sed etiam    | <i>but also</i>                   |
| stellās          | <i>the stars</i>  | agricolae    | <i>farmers</i>                    |
| ex fenestrā meā  | <i>from my win-<br/>dow</i>                                   | circum       | <i>around</i>                     |
| prope villam     | <i>near the coun-<br/>try-house</i>                           | habitant     | <i>dwell</i>                      |
| silva            | <i>a wood</i>   | casae        | <i>the cottages</i>               |
| saepe            | <i>often</i>  | agricolārum  | <i>of the farmers</i>             |
| ambulō           | <i>I walk</i>   | parvae       | <i>small</i>                      |
| quantopere       | <i>how much</i>   | casās albās  | <i>inhabit white<br/>cottages</i> |
|                  |   | habitant     | <i>visit the<br/>cottages</i>     |
|                  |   | casās vīstat |                                   |

Compare the Singular and Plural forms of the word 'amita' in the following sentences :

Amita mea casās vīstat. *My aunt visits cottages.*

Amitae meae casās vīstant. *My aunts visit cottages.*

Amitam meam amō. *I love my aunt.*

Amitās meās amō. *I love my aunts.*

Amitae meae villa est bella. *My aunt's country-house is pretty.*

Amitārum meārum villae sunt bellae. *'My aunts'  
country-houses are pretty.*

Cum amitā meā ambulō. *I walk with my aunt.*

Cum amitīs meīs ambulō. *I walk with my aunts.*

- Notice that the forms in -am (Singular) and -ās (Plural) occur
- (1) after certain Prepositions :  
ante iānuam, *before the door* ; post cēnam, *after supper* ;  
prope villam, *near the house* ; inter fēriās, *during the holidays*.
- (2) without any Preposition, to complete the sense with certain Verbs. The form in -am or -as is then called the Object of the Verb. In the following sentences it will be seen that the forms in -am and -as differ in meaning from those in -a and -ae just as *me* differs from *I* (or 'him,' 'them,' 'whom,' from 'he,' 'they,' 'who') in English :—

|                         |                 |                        |
|-------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| <i>I</i>                | <i>love</i>     | <i>sailors.</i>        |
| Ego                     | amō             | nautās.                |
| <i>Sailors</i>          | <i>love</i>     | <i>me.</i>             |
| Nautae                  | amant           | mē.                    |
| <i>The maid-servant</i> | <i>prepares</i> | <i>supper.</i>         |
| Ancilla                 | parat           | cēnam.                 |
| <i>Sailors</i>          | <i>inhabit</i>  | <i>white cottages.</i> |
| Nautae                  | habitant        | casās albās.           |

## § 4.

|                   |                         |                  |                        |
|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| rēgīna mea        | <i>my queen</i>         | undārum          | <i>of the waves</i>    |
| magna             | <i>great</i>            | triumphō         | <i>I triumph, I</i>    |
| glōria            | <i>the glory</i>        |                  | <i>exult</i>           |
| Victōriae Rēgīnae | <i>of Queen Vic-</i>    | tē amō           | <i>I love thee</i>     |
|                   | <i>toria (or Queen</i>  | Britannia        | <i>o Britain</i>       |
|                   | <i>Victoria's)</i>      | vōs              | <i>you</i>             |
| in insulis Brit-  |                         | insulae Britann- |                        |
| annicīs           | <i>in the British</i>   | icae             | <i>o British isles</i> |
|                   | <i>islands</i>          | nōn est          | <i>is not</i>          |
| colōniae Britann- |                         | patria           | <i>native-land</i>     |
| icae              | <i>British colonies</i> | ex Āfricā        |                        |
| domina            | <i>mistress</i>         | Meridiānā        | <i>from South</i>      |
|                   | [ <i>dame</i> ]         |                  | <i>Africa</i>          |
| multārum terrārum | <i>of many lands</i>    | sum              | <i>I am</i>            |

Note that the forms in -a (Singular) and -ae (Plural) may be used in speaking to persons or things : in such cases we may translate by using the word 'o' in English, but generally it is better to leave out this word : tē, Britannia, amō, *I love thee, Britain* : vōs, insulae Britannicae, amō, *I love you, British isles*.

## § 5.

|                             |  |                     |  |
|-----------------------------|--|---------------------|--|
| quoque                      | <i>too, also</i>   | operam dās          | <i>givest (give)<br/>attention<br/>(= study)</i> |
| consōbrīna                  | <i>cousin</i>  |                     |  |
| apud amitam<br>meam         | <i>at the house of<br/>my aunt</i>                       | ego operam dō       | <i>I give atten-<br/>tion</i>                    |
| columbās cūrat              | <i>keeps doves</i>                                       | linguis antiquis    | <i>to the ancient<br/>languages</i>              |
| cūra                        | <i>the care</i>  | Rōmae               | <i>of Rome</i>                                   |
| columbārum                  | <i>of doves</i>  | Graeciae            | <i>of Greece</i>                                 |
| Lȳdiae                      | <i>to Lydia</i>  | cum Lȳdiā           | <i>see § 1: cum<br/>amitā meā</i>                |
| laetitiam dat               | <i>gives delight</i>                                     | ad silvam           | <i>to the wood</i>                               |
| tū, Lȳdia                   | <i>thou (you),<br/>Lydia</i>                             | vel                 | <i>or</i>  |
| cum                         | <i>when</i>  | nāvigāmus           | <i>we sail</i>                                   |
| es                          | <i>thou art,<br/>you are</i>                             | undae delectant     | <i>the waves de-<br/>light</i>                   |
| apud magistrā<br>tuam       | <i>at the house of<br/>thy (your)<br/>schoolmistress</i> | vōs, filiae, amātis | <i>you, o daugh-<br/>ters, love</i>              |
| linguae Franco-<br>gallicae | <i>to the French<br/>language</i>                        | vōs amat            | <i>loves you</i>                                 |
| Anglicae                    | <i>to the English</i>                                    | ubi . . . ibi       | <i>where . . . there</i>                         |
|                             |  | inopia              | <i>want, poverty</i>                             |
|                             |  | levat               | <i>relieves</i>                                  |

Compare carefully :

**Lȳdiae** laetitiam dat, *gives pleasure to Lydia.*


**ad silvam** ambulō, *I walk to the wood.*

The forms in -ae (Singular) and -is (Plural) meaning 'to' are often found with verbs of 'giving'; hence they are called the 'Dative Case' (Case of Giving). But they are *not used with verbs of 'going'*; with these verbs 'to' is expressed by the Preposition 'ad' followed by a form in -am (Singular) or -as (Plural).

## First Declension.

|           |           |                          | NAME OF CASE. |
|-----------|-----------|--------------------------|---------------|
| 1st CASE. | Lȳdia     | <i>Lydia</i>             | Nominative.   |
| 2nd CASE. | Lȳdia     | <i>o Lydia</i>           | Vocative.     |
| 3rd CASE. | Lȳdiam    | <i>Lydia</i>             | Accusative.   |
| 4th CASE. | Lȳdiae    | <i>Lydia's, of Lydia</i> | Genitive.     |
| 5th CASE. | Lȳdiae    | <i>to Lydia</i>          | Dative.       |
| 6th CASE. | cum Lȳdiā | <i>with Lydia</i>        | Ablative.     |

| SINGULAR. |  | PLURAL.  |
|-----------|--|--|
| 1         | villa bella                                      | villae bellae                                    |
| 2         | villa bella                                      | villae bellae                                    |
| 3         | villam bellam                                    | villās bellās                                    |
| 4         | villae bellae                                    | villārum bellārum                                |
| 5         | villae bellae ( <i>with a verb of 'giving'</i> ) | villīs bellīs ( <i>with a verb of 'giving'</i> ) |
| 6         | in villā bellā                                   | in villīs bellīs                                 |

 The Preposition which is used with the Ablative Case must be varied to suit the sense of the noun which is being declined: e.g. 'cum Lȳdiā,' but 'in villā' or 'ex villā' or 'ā villā.'

## Present Tense of 'sum' and 1st Conjugation.

|            | SINGULAR.                            | PLURAL.                   |
|------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1st PERSON | sum, <i>I am</i>                     | sumus, <i>we are</i>      |
| 2nd PERSON | es, <i>thou art (you are)</i>        | estis, <i>you are</i>     |
| 3rd PERSON | est, <i>he (she, it) is</i>          | sunt, <i>they are</i>     |
| 1st PERSON | spectō, <i>I see</i>                 | spectāmus, <i>we see</i>  |
| 2nd PERSON | spectās, <i>thou seest (you see)</i> | spectātis, <i>you see</i> |
| 3rd PERSON | spectat, <i>he (she, it) sees</i>    | spectant, <i>they see</i> |

The verb 'dō,' *I give*, has a short *a* in the 1st and 2nd person plural: dāmus, dātis.

## II. My Uncle.

§ 6. ¶ In this and the following Preparations the nouns of the 1st Decl. will be given in the Nom. Sing., except when a whole phrase is quoted.

|                |   |                  |                                       |
|----------------|---|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| patruus meus   | <i>my uncle</i>   | prope hortum     | <i>near the garden</i>                |
| quondam        | <i>once, formerly</i>   | unde             | <i>whence, from which</i>             |
| praefectus     | <i>an officer</i>   | aqua             | <i>water</i>                          |
| erat           | <i>was</i>  | portāmus         | <i>we fetch, we carry</i>             |
| militiā* vacat | <i>he is free (i.e. he has retired) from military service</i> | hortum irrigāmus | <i>we water [irrigate] the garden</i> |
| agellō suō     | <i>to his farm</i>  | in hortō         | <i>in the garden</i>                  |
| agellus        | <i>the farm or estate</i>                                     | numerus          | <i>number</i>                         |
| patruī mei     | <i>of my uncle</i>  | rosa             | <i>a rose</i>                         |
| magnus         | <i>large</i>  | viola            | <i>a violet</i>                       |
| circum villam  | <i>around the villa</i>                                       | tibi             | <i>to thee, to you</i>                |
| hortus         | <i>a garden</i>   | mī patruē        | <i>o my uncle</i>                     |
| mūrus          | <i>a wall</i>   | cum patruō meō   | <i>with my uncle</i>                  |
| horti          | <i>of the garden</i>  | ambulās          | <i>thou walkest, you walk</i>         |
| altus          | <i>high</i>   |                  |                                       |
| rivus          | <i>a stream [river]</i>                                       |                  |                                       |

\* Note the Ablative without a Preposition, here meaning 'from.'

## Second Declension.

## NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN -US.

## SINGULAR NUMBER.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | hortus bellus, <i>a pretty garden</i>                            |
| 2 | horte belle, <i>o pretty garden</i>                              |
| 3 | hortum bellum, <i>a pretty garden</i>                            |
| 4 | horti bellī, <i>of a pretty garden</i>                           |
| 5 | hortō bellō, <i>to a pretty garden (with a verb of 'giving')</i> |
| 6 | in hortō bellō, <i>in a pretty garden</i>                        |



## § 7.

|                   |                      |                    |  |
|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------|--|
| angulus           | angle, corner        | mergīs             | to sea-gulls                           |
| ulmī              | elms                 | cibum dat          | gives food                             |
| in ulmīs          | in the elms          | agellus suus       | his estate                             |
| corvī             | crows                | equī               | horses                                 |
| nīdificant        | make nests           | vacca              | cow                                    |
| corvōs spectō     | I watch the<br>crows | porcī              | pigs [pork]                            |
| libenter          | gladly               | galli gallinae-que | cocks and hens                         |
| circum nīdōs suōs | round their<br>nests | gallōs cūrat       | minds the cocks                        |
| volitant          | they fly             | vīcus              | a village                              |
| corvōrum          | of crows             | rusticī            | the country-<br>folk, the<br>rustics   |
| multi mergī       | many sea-gulls       | nōnnullī ex        |  |
| super ōceanum     | over the ocean       | rusticīs           | some of (out of)<br>the rustics        |
| mergī             | o sea-gulls          | cum equīs          | with (together<br>with) the<br>horses. |
| volitātis         | you fly              |                    |  |
| praeda            | prey                 |                    |  |
| captātis          | you catch            |                    |  |
| ōceanus           | the ocean            |                    |  |

Note in the above:—1. corvī nīdificant, *crows make nests*.  
 2. vōs, corvī, *you, o crows*. 3. corvōs spectō, *I watch crows*.  
 4. numerus corvōrum, *a number of crows*. 5. corvīs dat, *gives to crows*. 6. cum corvīs, *with crows*.

| SINGULAR. |  | PLURAL.                                    |
|-----------|--|--|
| 1         | hortus bellus                            | hortī bellī                                |
| 2         | horte belle                              | hortī hellī                                |
| 3         | hortum bellum                            | hortōs bellōs                              |
| 4         | hortī bellī                              | hortōrum bellōrum                          |
| 5         | hortō bellō (with a verb<br>of 'giving') | hortīs bellīs (with a verb of<br>'giving') |
| 6         | in hortō bellō                           | in hortīs bellīs                           |

§ 8. ¶ In this and the following Preparations the nouns of the 2nd Decl. in -us will be given in the Nom. Sing., except when a whole phrase is quoted.

|                |  |                |                                       |
|----------------|--|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| scopulus albus | <i>a white cliff</i>                   | spectāre       | <i>to see</i>                         |
| ab-est         | <i>is distant</i>                      | (undae) tran-  | <i>calm, tranquil</i>                 |
| noctū          | <i>by night, in the<br/>night-time</i> | quillae        | <i>(waves)</i>                        |
| pharus         | <i>light-house</i>                     | lavātis        | <i>you wash [lave]</i>                |
| velut          | <i>as, even as</i>                     | dēlectātis     | <i>you delight</i>                    |
| stella clāra   | <i>a bright star</i>                   | (undae) turbu- |                                       |
| in ōceanō      | <i>on the ocean</i>                    | lentae         | <i>rough, turbu-<br/>lent (waves)</i> |
| illustrat      | <i>lights up</i>                       | spūmātis       | <i>you foam</i>                       |
|                | [illustrates]                          | murmurātis     | <i>you murmur</i>                     |

### III. Ancient Monuments.

§ 9. ¶ In this and the following Preparations the verbs of the 1st Conjugation, Present Tense, will be given in the 1st Person Sing., except where a whole phrase is quoted.

|                 |                                       |                 |  |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------|--|
| in Cantiō       | <i>in Kent</i>                        | multōs nummōs   | <i>many coins</i>  |
| inter           | <i>between</i>                        | (nummōs) aureōs | <i>golden (coins)</i>  |
| Dubrae          | <i>Dover</i>                          | (nummōs) argen- | <i>(coins) made of</i>                                       |
| Rutupiae        | <i>Richborough</i>                    | teōs            | <i>silver</i>  |
| situs           | <i>situated</i>                       | (nummōs) aēneōs | <i>made of copper</i>  |
| oppida antiq̄ua | <i>ancient towns</i>                  | et . . . et     | <i>both . . . and</i>  |
| multa monumenta | <i>many monu-<br/>ments</i>           | Britannus       | <i>a Briton</i>  |
| vestigia        | <i>vestiges, traces</i>               | occultō         | <i>I hide</i>  |
| Rōmānus         | <i>a Roman</i>                        | causa           | <i>a cause, source</i>                                       |
| reliquiae       | <i>relics</i>                         | lucrī           | <i>of gain [lucre]</i>                                       |
| oppidōrum       | <i>of towns</i>                       | arō             | <i>I plough</i>  |
| amphitheātrōrum | <i>of amphi-<br/>theatres</i>         | fundāmenta      | <i>the foundations</i>                                       |
| hodiē           | <i>to-day, at the<br/>present day</i> | aedificiōrum    | <i>of buildings<br/>[edifices]</i>                           |
| ex-siō          | <i>I exist, remain</i>                | excavō          | <i>I excavate</i>  |
| via             | <i>a road</i>                         | magnō pretiō*   | <i>at a great price</i>                                      |
| Londinium       | <i>London</i>                         | vēnum-dō        | <i>I offer for sale</i>                                      |
| solum           | <i>soil</i>                           | patruō meō est  | <i>my uncle has ;<br/>literally to my uncle<br/>there is</i> |

\*Note the Ablative without a Preposition, here meaning 'at,' (an expression of 'price' or 'value').

Note the words *Dubrae*, *Dover*; *Rutupiae*, *Richborough*; *reliquiae*, *relics*. These words are Plural in form and have no Singular. The first two are Singular in meaning, like the English 'Athens' (Latin 'Athēnae'); the third is Plural in meaning.

### Second Declension—continued.

#### NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN -UM.

| SINGULAR. |   | PLURAL.                                     |
|-----------|---|---|
| 1, 2, 3   | oppidum, a town, o town                     | oppida, towns, o towns                      |
| 4         | oppidī, of a town                           | oppidōrum, of towns                         |
| 5         | oppidō, to a town (with a verb of 'giving') | oppidīs, to towns (with a verb of 'giving') |
| 6         | in oppidō, in a town                        | in oppidīs, in towns                        |

Similarly with an adjective : oppidum antiquum, an ancient town.

§ 10. In this and the following Preparations the nouns of the 2nd Declension in -um will be given in the Nom. Sing., except when a whole phrase is quoted.

|               |                                 |                        |  |
|---------------|---------------------------------|------------------------|--|
| commentārii   | notes, commentaries             | aedificium consecratum | a consecrated building                             |
| dē vitā meā   | about my life                   | iam                    | already  |
| scriptitō     | I write, jot down<br>[scribble] | secundō saeculō*       | in the second century                              |
| super oppidum | above the town                  | post Christum nātum    | after the birth of Christ (lit. after Christ born) |
| castellum     | fort [castle]                   | basilica Christiāna    | a Christian basilica (or church)                   |
| specula       | a watch-tower                   |                        |  |
| mūrī lātī     | broad walls                     |                        |  |

\*Note the Ablative without a Preposition, here meaning 'in' (an expression of 'time when').

## § II.

|                  |  |                     |                         |
|------------------|--|---------------------|-------------------------|
| prōmunturium     | <i>a promontory, headland</i>            | nāvigium Germanicum | <i>a German vessel</i>  |
| stō              | <i>I stand</i>                           | nāvigium Belgicum   | <i>a Belgian vessel</i> |
| post castellum   | <i>behind the castle</i>                 | nōnnulla (nāvigia)  | <i>some (vessels)</i>   |
| clivus gramineus | <i>a grassy hill or down</i>             | ex nāvigiiis        | <i>of the vessels</i>   |
| fretum Gallicum  | <i>the English (lit. Gallic) Channel</i> | sunt nōmināta       | <i>are named</i>        |
| oculus           | <i>an eye</i>                            | "castella" i.e.     | <i>Castle Liners</i>    |
| vēlum album      | <i>a white sail</i>                      | littera C           | <i>the letter C</i>     |
|                  |  | in signō            | <i>on the flag</i>      |
|                  |  | in (with Acc.)      | <i>to</i>               |

## IV. Boys' Amusements.

## § 12.

|   |   |                 |                          |
|---|---|-----------------|--------------------------|
| dēlectāmentum                                     | <i>amusement [delight]</i>                        | condiscipulus   | <i>schoolfellow</i>      |
| puerōrum  | <i>of boys</i>                                    | liber scholīs*  | <i>free from lessons</i> |
| amicus  | <i>friend</i>                                     | amicitia        | <i>friendship</i>        |
| duo puerī   | <i>two boys</i>                                   | ūnā             | <i>together</i>          |
| Marcus  | <i>Mark</i>                                       | unda spūmifera  | <i>a foamy wave</i>      |
| puer  | <i>a boy</i>                                      | natō            | <i>I swim, bathe</i>     |
| quattuor-decim                                    | <i>four-teen</i>                                  | nimis           | <i>too</i>               |
| annus   | <i>year</i>                                       | (undae) asperae | <i>rough (waves)</i>     |
| quattuordecim annōrum                             | <i>of fourteen years, i.e. fourteen years old</i> | nōs puerōs      | <i>us boys</i>           |
|   |   | lūdus           | <i>game</i>              |
| mihi  | <i>to me</i>                                      | pila            | <i>ball [pill]</i>       |
| praecipuus  | <i>chief, especial, particular</i>                | ut              | <i>how</i>               |
| Calēdonia   | <i>Scotland</i>                                   | iuvat           | <i>it delights</i>       |
| (pueri) oriundī                                   | <i>(boys) sprung</i>                              | aedificāre      | <i>to build</i>          |
| nōbis puerīs sunt                                 | <i>to us boys there</i>                           | contrā undās    | <i>against the waves</i> |
| are (= we boys have ;<br>cf. patruo meo est, § 9) |   |                 |                          |

For the forms in -āre see  
§ 8 : spectāre, to see.

\* Note the Ablative without a Preposition, here meaning 'from' ; cf. militiā vacat, § 6.

## § 13.

|                   |   |              |                          |
|-------------------|---|--------------|--------------------------|
| plēnae gaudiōrum  | <i>full of joys</i>                       | plērumque    | <i>mostly, generally</i> |
| ā māne            | <i>from morn</i>                          |              | <i>ally</i>              |
| usque ad vesperum | <i>right on till eve</i>                  | rēmigō       | <i>I row</i>             |
|                   | [ <i>vespers</i> ]                        | dō           | <i>I set</i> (cf. § 5,   |
| nōnnumquam        | <i>sometimes</i> (lit.                    |              | <i>give</i> )            |
|                   | <i>not never</i> )                        | ventus asper | <i>a rough wind</i>      |
| Petrus            | <i>Peter</i>                              | gubernō      | <i>I steer</i> [govern]  |
| adulescentulus    | <i>a young man</i>                        | ministrō     | <i>I attend</i>          |
| vīgintī           | <i>twenty</i>                             |              | [ <i>minister</i> ]      |
| rēinus *          | <i>oar</i>                                | laudō        | <i>I praise</i>          |
| (scapha) apta     | <i>(a boat) fitted,</i><br><i>adapted</i> |              |                          |

\* Note the Dative meaning 'for' (rēmīs, *for oars*).

### Second Declension—continued.

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES LIKE 'PUER'

(*i.e.*, without the ending *-us* or *-um* in the Nom. Sing.)

| SINGULAR. |                              | PLURAL.                      |
|-----------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1         | puer, <i>a boy</i>           | puerī, <i>boys</i>           |
| 2         | puer, <i>o boy</i>           | puerī, <i>o boys</i>         |
| 3         | puerum, <i>a boy</i>         | puerōs, <i>boys</i>          |
| 4         | puerī, <i>a boy's</i>        | puerōrum, <i>boys'</i>       |
| 5         | puerō, <i>to a boy</i>       | puerīs, <i>to boys</i>       |
| 6         | cum puerō, <i>with a boy</i> | cum puerīs, <i>with boys</i> |

There are not many nouns declined like 'puer.' Vesper, *evening* or *evening star*, is like it for the most part, but has no Plural. There are, however, a few adjectives (not many) declined like 'puer' in both Singular and Plural, for instance : liber *free*; miser, *unhappy, miserable*; asper, *rough*; spūmifer, *foamy, foam-bearing* and other words compounded of fer, *bearing*).

§ 14. ~~14~~ In this and the following Preparations the nouns of the 2nd Declension like *puer* will be given in the Nom. Sing., except when a whole phrase is quoted.

|                 |   |                 |   |
|-----------------|---|-----------------|---|
| locus           | <i>place</i>  | constantia      | <i>constancy</i>  |
| fābula          | <i>play, drama,</i><br>[fable]                                    | ex poētā        | <i>named after</i>  |
| conmemorātus    | <i>mentioned</i><br>[commemorated]                                | nōminātus       | <i>(from) the</i><br><i>poet;</i><br>i.e. <i>Shakspeare's cliff</i> |
| Leir            | <i>Lear</i>   | vir generōsus   | <i>a man of noble</i><br><i>birth, a nobleman</i><br>[generous]     |
| rēgulus         | <i>ruler, petty</i><br><i>king</i>                                | amicus fidus    | <i>a faithful</i><br><i>friend</i>                                  |
| fortūna misera  | <i>unhappy fate</i><br>[miserable fortune]                        | dē scopulō      | <i>down from the</i><br><i>cliff</i>                                |
| dēplōrō         | <i>I deplore,</i><br><i>lament</i>                                | sē praccipitāre | <i>to hurl himself</i><br>[precipitate]                             |
| stultitia       | <i>folly</i>  | parō            | <i>I prepare</i>  |
| culpō           | <i>I blame</i>  | filius suus     | <i>his own son</i>  |
| animus ingrātus | <i>ingratitude</i><br>(lit. <i>an ungrateful</i><br><i>mind</i> ) | virum servat    | <i>saves the man</i><br>[preserves]                                 |
| accūsō          | <i>I accuse</i>   | periculum       | <i>peril, danger</i>  |
| fortūna aspera  | <i>hārsh fate</i>   |                 |   |
| filiae impiae   | <i>unnatural</i><br>[impious] <i>daughters</i>                    |                 |   |

## Vir.

| SINGULAR. |                             | PLURAL.                    |
|-----------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1         | vir, <i>a man</i>           | virī, <i>men</i>           |
| 2         | vir, <i>o man</i>           | virī, <i>o men</i>         |
| 3         | virum, <i>a man</i>         | virōs, <i>men</i>          |
| 4         | virī, <i>a man's</i>        | virōrum, <i>men's</i>      |
| 5         | virō, <i>to a man</i>       | virīs, <i>to men</i>       |
| 6         | cum virō, <i>with a man</i> | cum virīs, <i>with men</i> |

There is no other word in Latin exactly like 'vir'; but 'Leir' is declined in the same way in some Latin Histories of the Britons.

## § 15.

## V. Our Schoolmaster.

|                    |                                   |                   |   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|---|
| magister noster    | <i>our school-master, teacher</i> | magistrō nostrō   | <i>to our master</i>  |
| vir doctus         | <i>a learned man</i>              | librōrum pulchr-  |   |
| perītus lūdōrum    | <i>skilled in (lit. of) games</i> | ōrum              | <i>of fine books</i>  |
| cārus (with Dat.)  | <i>dear (to)</i>                  | schola nostra     | <i>our school</i>   |
| dextra             | <i>right-hand</i>                 | (schola) clāra    | <i>(a) famous (school)</i>  |
| magistrī nostrī    | <i>our school-master's</i>        | librīs            | <i>to books</i>   |
| (dextra) valida    | <i>(a) strong (right hand)</i>    | in vicō nostrō    | <i>in our village</i>   |
| puerī pigrī        | <i>lazy boys</i>                  | lūdus litterārius | <i>an elementary school (litterārius = where pupils are taught 'litterae,' cf. § 11). 'Schola' means a more advanced kind of school</i> |
| nec . . . nec      | <i>neither . . . nor</i>          | crēber puerīs*    | <i>crowded (filled)</i>   |
| magistrum amant    | <i>love the master</i>            | et puellīs        | <i>with boys and girls</i>  |
| Sabidī             | <i>o Sabidius</i>                 | (crēber) liberīs  | <i>with children</i>  |
|                    | (see note below)                  |                   | (Plural of the adjective liber, free: literally free ones, i.e. children of free-born parents)  |
| possum             | <i>I can, I am able</i>           | cum Alexandrō     | <i>with Alexander</i>   |
| dīcere (3rd Conj.) | <i>(to) say</i>                   | (cum) amicīs      |   |
| quārē              | <i>why</i>                        | meīs              | <i>(with) my friends</i>  |
| hōc tantum         | <i>this only</i>                  | ad Ventam Belg-   | <i>at (or near)</i>   |
| quia               | <i>because</i>                    | ārū               | <i>Winchester</i>   |
| librōs amant       | <i>they love books</i>            |                   | (Venta of the Belgae in Hampshire)  |
| (librōs) Graecōs   | <i>Greek (books)</i>              |                   |   |
| (librōs) Latīnōs   | <i>Latin (books)</i>              |                   |   |
| discipulus         | <i>pupil [disciple]</i>           |                   |   |
| scholae nostrae    | <i>of our school</i>              |                   |   |
| atque              | <i>and also</i>                   |                   |   |
| scientiae mathē-   |                                   |                   |   |
| maticae            | <i>mathematical sciences</i>      |                   |   |

The lines quoted above (from the poet Martial, about a Roman called Sabidius) are the original of the following English verses:

I do not like you, Dr. Fell;  
 The reason why I cannot tell.  
 But this one thing I know full well,  
 I do not like you, Dr. Fell.

\*Note the Ablative without a Preposition, here meaning 'with.'

Second Declension—*continued.*

## NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES LIKE 'MAGISTER.'

| SINGULAR. |                                    | PLURAL.                            |
|-----------|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1         | magister, <i>a master</i>          | magistrī, <i>masters</i>           |
| 2         | magister, <i>o master</i>          | magistrī, <i>o masters</i>         |
| 3         | magistrum, <i>a master</i>         | magistrōs, <i>masters</i>          |
| 4         | magistrī, <i>a master's</i>        | magistrōrum, <i>masters'</i>       |
| 5         | magistrō, <i>to a master</i>       | magistrīs, <i>to masters</i>       |
| 6         | cum magistrō, <i>with a master</i> | cum magistrīs, <i>with masters</i> |

Most nouns and adjectives of the 2nd Declension in *er* are declined like 'magister': liber, *book*; Alexander, *Alexander*; noster, *our*; piger, *lazy*; crēber, *crowded*; and many others.

These words differ from 'puer' only in dropping the *e* in all the Cases except the Nominative and the Vocative.

## Uses of the Forms of Adjectives.

It will have been seen that the form of the adjective depends on the form of the noun to which it belongs. Thus we have had:

magnus numerus, § 7   magna audācia, § 2   magnum castellum, § 10  
 scopulus albus, § 8   casa alba, § 3   vēlum album, § 11  
 nummus antīquus, § 9   specula antiqua, § 10   oppidum antīquum, § 9  
 patruus meus, § 6   amita mea, § 1  
 vir doctus, § 15  
 liber Latinus, § 15  
 ventus asper, § 13   fortūna aspera, § 14

It is clear, then, that there are many more forms of the



adjective than of the noun ; for each of the above adjectives has *three forms* of the Nominative Case :—

| - <i>us</i>                               | - <i>a</i> | - <i>um</i> |
|---|------------|-------------|
| (omitted in some adjectives like 'asper') |            |             |

Similarly we may arrange nouns in three classes :

| Nouns which take<br>adjectives in <i>us</i> (or<br>those like 'asper') | Nouns which take<br>adjectives in <i>-a</i> | Nouns which take<br>adjectives in <i>-um</i> |
|--|---|--|
| numerus  | audācia                                     | castellum                                    |
| nummus   | casa  | vēlum  |
| patruus  | specula                                     | oppidum                                      |
| vir*   | amita                                       | etc.   |
| liber*     •   | fortūna                                     |  |
| etc.   | etc.  |  |

\*Note that in these cases the ending of the noun is not the same as that of the adjective which goes with it.

To these three classes of nouns it is convenient to give names, nouns of the first class are called *masculine*, those of the second class are called *feminine*, those of the third class are called *neuter*. And the forms of the adjective taken by the different classes of nouns are called by the same names.

In order to know to which class a noun belongs (and therefore which form of the adjective it takes), observe the following rules:—

Nouns of the 1st Declension are feminine, except those denoting male persons, which are masculine: thus *insula*, *casa*, *ōra*, *amita*, are feminine; *agricola*, *nauta*, *poēta*, *incola*, are masculine.

Nouns of the 2nd Declension ending in *us* or *r* are masculine: e.g. *numerus*, *scopulus*, *patruus*, *liber*, *vir*. Some exceptions will be found later.

Nouns of the 2nd Declension ending in *um* are neuter.

TABLE OF THE FORMS OF ADJECTIVES.

| SINGULAR. |              |             |              | PLURAL.      |             |              |
|-----------|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
|           | <i>masc.</i> | <i>fem.</i> | <i>neut.</i> | <i>masc.</i> | <i>fem.</i> | <i>neut.</i> |
| 1         | magnus       | magna       | magnum       | magnī        | magnae      | magna        |
| 2         | magne        | magna       | magnum       | magnī        | magnae      | magna        |
| 3         | magnum       | magnam      | magnum       | magnōs       | magnās      | magna        |
| 4         | magnī        | magnae      | magnī        | magnōrum     | magnārum    | magnōrum     |
| 5         | magnō        | magnae      | magnō        | } magnīs     | magnīs      | magnīs       |
| 6         | magnō        | magnā       | magnō        |              |             |              |
| 1, 2      | asper        | aspera      | asperum      | asperī       | asperae     | aspera       |
| 3         | asperum      | asperam     | asperum      | asperōs      | asperās     | aspera       |
| 4         | asperī       | asperae     | asperī       | asperōrum    | asperōrum   | asperōrum    |
| 5         | asperō       | asperae     | asperō       | } asperīs    | asperīs     | asperīs      |
| 6         | asperō       | asperā      | asperō       |              |             |              |
| 1, 2      | noster       | nostra      | nostrum      | nostrī       | nostrae     | nostra       |
| 3         | nostrum      | nostram     | nostrum      | nostrōs      | nostrās     | nostra       |
| 4         | nostrī       | nostrae     | nostrī       | nostrōrum    | nostrārum   | nostrōrum    |
| 5         | nostrō       | nostrae     | nostrō       | } nostrīs    | nostrīs     | nostrīs      |
| 6         | nostrō       | nostrā      | nostrō       |              |             |              |

## PREPOSITIONS HITHERTO FOUND WITH THE ABLATIVE.

**ab** ōrā maritimā, § 1.  
**cum** nautīs, § 2.  
**dē** vitā, § 10; dē scopulō, § 14.  
**ex** fenestris, § 3.

**in** (= *in*): in Āfricā, § 6.  
 (= *on*): in arēnā, § 2.  
**sub** (= *under*): sub umbrā, § 1.


## PREPOSITIONS HITHERTO FOUND WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

**ad** silvam, § 5.  
**ante** iānuam, § 1.  
**apud** amitam ineam, § 5.  
**circum** villam, § 6.  
**in** (= *into* or *to*): in Āfricam, § 11.

**inter** fēriās, § 2.  
**post** cēnam, § 3.  
**prope** silvam, § 3.  
**super** ōceanum, § 7.

## VI. Ancient Britain.

## § 16.

 In this and the following Preparations all nouns and adjectives of the 1st and 2nd Declensions will be given in the Nom. Sing., except when a whole phrase is quoted.

|                     |   |  |                               |
|---------------------|---|--|-------------------------------|
| historicus, a, um   | <i>historical</i>   | silva Anderida   | <i>the Andreds-weald</i>      |
| studiōsus, a, um    | <i>fond, studious</i>   |  |                               |
| narrō               | <i>I tell, I narrate</i>                                      |  | (weald = forest)              |
| proximus, a, um     | <i>nearest</i>  | vastus, a, um  | <i>wild, waste</i>            |
| proximō annō*       | <i>last year</i>  |  | [vast]                        |
| dum                 | <i>while</i>  | incultus, a, um  | <i>uncultivated</i>           |
| erat                | <i>was (he was)</i>   | fēra   | <i>wild beast</i>             |
| narrābat            | <i>he used to tell</i>  | lupus  | <i>wolf</i>                   |
|                     | <i>or narrate</i>   | ursus  | <i>bear</i>                   |
| auscultābant        | <i>(they) used to listen</i>                                  | cervus   | <i>stag</i>                   |
| ad-eram             | <i>I used to be present</i>                                   | aper†  | <i>wild boar</i>              |
| sic                 | <i>so, thus, as follows</i>                                   | multus, a, um  | <i>much</i>                   |
| fere                | <i>almost</i>   | varius, a, um  | <i>varied</i>                 |
| tōtus, a, um        | <i>whole [total]</i>  | māteria  | <i>timber</i>                 |
| tōta Britannia      | <i>the whole of Britain</i>                                   |  | [material]                    |
|                     | The adj. tōtus, a, um is irregular in the Gen. and Dat. Sing. | fāgus (fem.)   | <i>beech</i>                  |
| densus, a, um       | <i>dense, thick</i>   |  Most nouns denoting trees are feminine |                               |
| fluvius             | <i>river</i>  | nōtus, a, um   | <i>known</i>                  |
| Tamesa †            | <i>Thames</i>   | sī   | <i>if</i>                     |
| ager†               | <i>field</i>  | Gāius Iūlius   | <i>i.e. Caesar</i>            |
| frūgifer, frūgifera | <i>fruitful</i>   | vērus, a, um   | <i>true</i>                   |
| frūgiferum          | [fruit-bearing]   | vēra (neut. pl.)   | <i>true things, the truth</i> |
|                     |   | affirmō  | <i>I affirm, I state</i>      |
|                     |   | pīnus (fem.)   | <i>pine</i>                   |
|                     |   | Scōticus, a, um  | <i>Scottish</i>               |
|                     |   | dē-erat  | <i>was wanting</i>            |

\*Note the Ablative without a Preposition, here meaning 'in' (time when), cf. § 10 secundō saeculō. † Tacitus calls the river 'Tamesa'; Caesar calls it 'Tamesis' (3rd Decl.).

‡ Declined like magister.

## § 17.

|                       |                        |                     |                            |
|-----------------------|------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|
| liber, libera, liber- |                        | pluvia*             | rain                       |
| um                    | free                   | nebula              | cloud                      |
|                       | With Abl.; cf. §6, §12 | āter, ātra, ātrum   | dark                       |
| metallum              | metal                  | foedus, a, um       | hideous                    |
| multī, ae, a          | many                   | pruīna              | frost                      |
| abundābat             | abounded               | ab-erant            | were absent                |
|                       | With Abl.              | nātūra              | nature                     |
| plumbum album         | white lead             | piger, pigra, pigr- |                            |
|                       | i.e. tin               | um                  | sluggish                   |
| ferrum                | iron                   | testimōnium         | testimony                  |
| atque                 | and moreover           | nauta Rōmānus       | see §15 (Rule of Genders)  |
| Tacitus               | Tacitus,               | inquit              | says he                    |
|                       | a Roman historian      | vix                 | scarcely, hardly           |
| aurum                 | gold                   | pot-erant           | were able                  |
| argentum              | silver                 | -ne                 | marks a question           |
| margarīta             | pearl                  |                     |                            |
|                       | [Margaret]             | an                  | or (in a question)         |
| ostrea                | oyster                 | satis               | sufficiently, enough       |
| dabat                 | gave, yielded          | impiger, impigra,   |                            |
| parvus, a, um         | small                  | impigrum            | active (lit. not sluggish) |
| praeclārus, a, um     | famous                 |                     |                            |
| caelum                | sky, climate           |                     |                            |
| tum quoque            | then too, i.e.         |                     |                            |
|                       | just as now            |                     |                            |
| crēber, crēbra,       |                        |                     |                            |
| crēbrum               | frequent               |                     |                            |

\*Note the Ablative without a Preposition, here meaning 'with': pluviis foedum, *hideous with rains*. Compare § 15, creber pueris, *crowded with boys*.

## § 18.

|                   |                             |                  |                  |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| incola antiquus   | see p. 75 (Rule of Genders) | flāvus, a, um    | yellow           |
| ferus, a, um      | savage                      | membrum          | limb [member]    |
| bellicōsus, a, um | warlike                     | rōbustus, a, um  | sturdy, robust   |
| erant             | were                        | Calēdonius       | Caledonian       |
| hasta*            | spear                       | Cambria          | Wales            |
| sagitta           | arrow                       | colōrātus, a, um | sun-burnt        |
| essedum           | chariot                     |                  | [coloured]       |
| inter sē          | among them-                 | statūra          | height, stature  |
|                   | selves, with                | niger, nigra,    |                  |
|                   | one another                 | nigrum           | black [nigger]   |
| pugnābant         | they used to                | ūniversī, ae, a  | all              |
|                   | fight                       |                  | [universal]      |
| proelium          | battle                      | vitrum           | wood (blue       |
| dēlectābant       | used to delight             |                  | colouring        |
| dīversus, a, um   | diverse, differ-            |                  | matter)          |
|                   | ent                         | colōrābant       | used to colour   |
| populus           | tribe [a people]            | hodiernus, a, um | of the present   |
| Celta             | Celt                        |                  | day              |
| sīcut             | as (lit. so as,             | vestīmentum      | garment          |
|                   | just as)                    |                  | [vestment]       |
| Germānus          | German                      | corium           | skin             |
| capillus          | hair                        | con-stābant      | used to con-sist |

\* Note Ablative without Preposition (hastis, *with spears*).

### Past Imperfect Tense of 'sum' and 1st Conjugation

|            | SINGULAR.                         | PLURAL.                 |
|------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1st PERSON | eram, <i>I was</i>                | erāmus, <i>we were</i>  |
| 2nd PERSON | erās, <i>thou wast (you were)</i> | erātis, <i>you were</i> |
| 3rd PERSON | erat, <i>he (she, it) was</i>     | erant, <i>they were</i> |
| 1st PERSON | spectābam, <i>I</i>               | spectābāmus, <i>we</i>  |
| 2nd PERSON | spectābās, <i>you</i>             | spectābātis, <i>you</i> |
| 3rd PERSON | spectābat, <i>he (she, it)</i>    | spectābant, <i>they</i> |

The verb 'dō,' *I give*, has the first *a* short in the Past Imperfect : dābam, dābās, dābat, dābāmus, dābātis, dābant.

## § 19.

*AB* In this and the following Preparations the verbs of the 1st Conjugation Present or Past Imperfect Tense will be given in the 1st Person Sing. of the Present.

|                 |   |                    |  |
|-----------------|---|--------------------|--|
| hīc             | <i>here, at this point</i>                    | Gallia             | <i>Gaul</i>                              |
| nōnne           | <i>not ? (= nōn + ne ; cf. verumne, § 17)</i> | in (with Acc.)     | <i>to, into</i>                          |
| ille            | <i>he (i.e. the teacher)</i>                  | causā*             | <i>for the sake</i>                      |
| aedificō        | <i>I build, § 12</i>                          | frūmentum          | <i>corn</i>                              |
| loca (neuter)   | plural of 'locus (masc.) <i>place</i>         | armentum           | <i>herd</i>                              |
| firmātus, a, um | <i>fortified</i>                              | catulus            | <i>dog</i>                               |
| quintus, a, um  | <i>fifth</i>                                  | vēnāticus, a, um   | <i>hunting</i>                           |
| Bellum Gallicum | <i>the Gallic War</i>                         | servus             | <i>slave</i>                             |
|                 | (name of one of Caesar's works)               | captīvus           | <i>captive</i>                           |
| multī (masc.)   | <i>many (people)</i>                          | exportō            | <i>I export</i>                          |
| putō            | <i>I fancy, think</i>                         | frēnum             | <i>bridle</i>                            |
| itaque          | <i>therefore, accordingly</i>                 | vitrea (neut. pl.) | <i>glass vessels</i>                     |
| plānē           | <i>altogether</i>                             | gemma              | <i>gem. precious stone</i>               |
| barbarus, a, um | <i>barbarous</i>                              | cēterī, ae, a      | <i>the others, the rest</i>              |
| agrī cultūra    | <i>agriculture</i>                            | cētera (neut.)     | <i>the other things, Eng. 'etcetera'</i> |
|                 | (cultivation of the land)                     | importō            | <i>I import</i>                          |
| etiam           | <i>even, also</i>                             | mediocriter        | <i>moderately, tolerably</i>             |
| mercātūra       | <i>commerce</i>                               | hūmānus, a, um     | <i>civilized</i>                         |
|                 | [merchandize]                                 |                    | [humane]                                 |
| Venetī          | <i>a tribe on the west coast of Gaul</i>      | nec                | <i>and not</i>                           |
|                 |   | multum             | <i>much, very</i>                        |
|                 |   | dīversus ā         | <i>different from</i>                    |
|                 |   | ā = ab, § 1        |  |
|                 |   | Gallī              | <i>the Gauls</i>                         |

\*Note the Ablative without a Preposition, here meaning 'by': causā, literally *by cause* or *by reason* ; hence *for the sake*.

## § 20

|                   |  |                   |   |
|-------------------|--|-------------------|---|
| mortuī            | <i>the dead</i>  | sacer, sacra,     |   |
| cremō             | <i>I burn</i>  | sacrum            | <i>sacred</i>   |
| sepulchrum        | <i>tomb</i><br>[sepulchre]                                       | sacra (neut. pl.) | <i>sacred rites</i><br>cf. vēra, § 16;<br>mediterrānea                                  |
| urna              | <i>urn</i>   | Druidae (masc.)   | <i>Druids</i>   |
| pu'chrē           | <i>beautifully</i>   | saevus, a, um     | <i>savage, cruel</i>  |
| ornātus, a, um    | <i>ornamented</i>  | fēmina            | <i>woman</i>  |
| fabricāre         | <i>to manufacture</i><br>[fabricate]                             | prō victimīs      | <i>instead of</i><br><i>victims,</i><br><i>as victims</i>                               |
| in-hūmānus, a, um | <i>un-civilized</i>  | (Abl.)            |   |
| rota              | <i>wheel</i>   | sacrificō         | <i>I sacrifice</i>  |
| ferrātus, a, um   | <i>fitted with iron</i>  | miser, misera,    |   |
| animī causā       | <i>for the sake of</i><br><i>amusement</i><br>(lit. of the mind) | miserum           | <i>unhappy,</i><br><i>miserable</i>   |
| esca              | <i>food, eating</i>  | cruciō            | <i>I torture</i>  |
| mediterrānea      |  | trucidō           | <i>I slaughter</i>  |
| (neut. pl.)       | <i>Midlands</i><br>(midland<br>parts; cf.<br>vēra, § 16)         | simulācrum        | <i>image</i>  |
| humō              | <i>I bury</i>  | plēnus, a, um     | <i>filled (with the</i><br><i>Abl.); or full (with the</i><br><i>Gen.), § 13, § 16.</i> |
| ferīna*           | <i>flesh of wild</i><br><i>animals,</i><br><i>game</i>           | discordia         | <i>quarrel</i><br>[discord]   |
| victitō           | <i>I live</i>  | inter sē          | see § 18: <i>inter</i><br><i>sē pugnābant</i>   |
| deus              | <i>god</i>   | victōria          | <i>victory</i>  |
| fānum             | <i>shrine</i>  | parābant          | <i>say prepared</i><br><i>the way for</i>   |
| lūcus             | <i>grove</i>   |                   |   |

\*Note the Ablative without a Preposition, here meaning 'by means of': *ferinā victitabant, they lived on (= by means of) game.*

Summary of meanings of the Ablative without a Preposition:

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <i>from</i> (§ 6, § 12) | <i>with</i> (§§ 15, 17, 18, 20 after plēna) |
| <i>at</i> (§ 9)         | <i>by</i> (§ 19)                            |
| <i>in</i> (§ 10, § 16)  | <i>by means of</i> (§ 20)                   |

## VII. Footprints of the Romans.

§21. ~~21~~ From this point onwards the *a* of the Ablative Singular, 1st Declension, is not distinguished by the long mark in the text.

|                  |                                |  |                        |
|------------------|--------------------------------|--|------------------------|
| nūper            | recently, lately               | ambulābitis                                      | you will walk          |
| mē-cum           | with me                        | nōbīs-cum  | with us                |
| dēlectābit       | it will delight                | ego vērō   | I indeed               |
| inquam           | I say                          | ambulābō   | will walk              |
| visitāre         | to visit                       | tē-cum   | with thee, with        |
| stō              | I stand                        |  | you                    |
| monstrā          | show                           | mihi   | to me                  |
| nōbīs            | to us                          | pergrātus, a, um                                 | very pleasing          |
| amābō tē         | please (lit. I shall love you) | monstrābis                                       | you will show          |
| ruīnae (plur.)   | ruins                          | festinā lentē                                    | hasten slowly          |
| Rutupīnus, a, um | belonging to Richborough       |  | i.e. don't go too fast |
| tum              | then                           | nullus, a, um (irregular in Gen. and Dat. Sing.) | not any                |
| longus, a, um    | long                           | disputō  | I dispute              |
| aliquandō        | some day                       | quotā hōrā                                       | at what hour,          |
| monstrābō        | I will show (them)             |  | at what o'clock        |
| crās             | to-morrow                      | parātus, a, um                                   | prepared, ready        |
| vōbīs            | to you                         | eritis   | you will be            |
| grātus, a, um    | pleasing                       | quintā hōrā                                      | at the fifth hour      |
| erit             | it will be                     |  | i.e. at eleven o'clock |
| ambulābimus      | we shall walk                  | inquiunt   | they say               |

## § 22.

|                |                                     |   |                  |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|---|------------------|
| postrīdiē      | on the next day                     | pot-eritis                                | will you be able |
| serēnus, a, um | clear [serene]                      | Dubris*                                   | from Dover       |
| ientāculum     | breakfast                           | adventābunt                               | will arrive      |
| dabit          | will you give                       | intrā duās                                | within two       |
| vōs in viam    | yourselves to the road              | hōrās                                     | hours            |
|                | i.e. will you start to sup, to dine | ambulāre                                  | to walk          |
| cēnāre         | from cēnō, I sup                    | pot-erimus                                | we shall be able |
|                |                                     | ūnus, a, um (irreg. one in G. & D. Sing.) |                  |



|                  |                           |            |                       |
|------------------|---------------------------|------------|-----------------------|
| red-ambulābimus  | <i>we shall walk back</i> | nihil      | <i>nothing</i>        |
| decimus, a, um   | <i>tenth</i>              | gustābimus | <i>we shall taste</i> |
| undecimus, a, um | <i>eleventh</i>           | prandium   | <i>lunch</i>          |
| domī             | <i>at home</i>            | vōbīs-cum  | <i>with you</i>       |
| spērō            | <i>I hope</i>             | portāte    | <i>carry</i>          |
| iētūnus, a, um   | <i>hungry</i>             | crustulum  | <i>cake</i>           |
| erimus           | <i>shall we be</i>        | pōmum      | <i>apple</i>          |
|                  |                           | cūrābō     | <i>will provide</i>   |

\*Note the Ablative without a Preposition, here meaning 'from.'

RULE.—Names of Towns take no Prepositions to express the meaning 'from' or 'to' with a verb of 'going.'

### Future Tense of 'sum' and 1st Conjugation.

|            | SINGULAR.  | PLURAL.                          |
|------------|--|----------------------------------|
| 1st PERSON | erō, <i>I shall be</i>                                     | erimus, <i>we shall be</i>       |
| 2nd PERSON | eris, <i>thou wilt be</i><br>( <i>you will be</i> )        | eritis, <i>you will be</i>       |
| 3rd PERSON | erit, <i>he (she, it) will be</i>                          | erunt, <i>they will be</i>       |
| 1st PERSON | spectābō, <i>I shall see</i>                               | spectābimus, <i>we shall see</i> |
| 2nd PERSON | spectābis, <i>thou wilt see</i><br>( <i>you will see</i> ) | spectābitis, <i>you will see</i> |
| 3rd PERSON | spectābit, <i>he (she, it) will see</i>                    | spectābunt, <i>they will see</i> |

NOTE.—The verb 'dō,' *I give*, has the *a* short in the Future : dābō, dābis, dābit, dābimus, dābitis, dābunt. Also in 'dāre,' *to give* ; and see notes on §5 and §18.

### Imperative of 1st Conjugation.

|             | SINGULAR.                 | PLURAL.                   |
|-------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 2nd PERSON. | spectā, <i>see (thou)</i> | spectāte, <i>see (ye)</i> |

## § 23.

<sup>23</sup> In this and the following Preparations new verbs of the 1st Conjugation, Future or Imperative, will be given in the 1st Pers. Sing. of the Present.

|               |  |                  |                                      |
|---------------|--|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| appropinquō   | <i>I approach</i>                        | adventāvimus     | <i>we have arrived</i>               |
| cupidē        | <i>eagerly</i>                           | fere             | <i>* almost</i>                      |
| exspectō      | <i>I expect</i>                          | tertius, a, um   | <i>third</i>                         |
| ad sonum      | <i>at the sound</i>                      | fuit             | <i>it was</i>                        |
| tintinnābulum | <i>bell</i>                              | nōs dedimus*     | <i>we gave our-selves</i>            |
| properāvī     | <i>I hastened</i>                        | celeriter        | <i>quickly</i>                       |
| ecce          | <i>behold</i>                            | nōn pot-est      | <i>is not able, can not</i>          |
| ad iānuam     | <i>at the door</i>                       | fatigātus, a, um | <i>tired [fatigued]</i>              |
| intrāvērunt   | <i>they entered</i>                      | quota hōra est?  | <i>what o'clock is it?</i>           |
| exclāmāvimus  | <i>we exclaimed</i>                      | nōndum           | <i>not yet</i>                       |
| eugē          | <i>bravo!</i>                            | ad ambulandum    | <i>for walking</i>                   |
| opportūnē     | <i>in the nick of time [opportunely]</i> | nōs vērō         | <i>that we are!</i>                  |
| adventāvistis | <i>you have arrived</i>                  | (parātī sumus)   | <i>(cf. § 21)</i>                    |
| num           | <i>marks a question, like whether</i>    | bene ambulāte    | <i>lit. walk well, i.e. good bye</i> |
| sērō          | <i>late</i>                              |                  |                                      |

\*It is well for the pupil to realize from the first that there is no Conjugation in which all the verbs form their Perfect Stems in the same way. Such formations as 'dedī' are irregular only so far as the Stem is concerned.

## § 24.

|                    |                                  |                   |                           |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| inter viam         | <i>on the way</i>                | propinquus, a, um | <i>neighbouring</i>       |
| multa              | <i>many things</i>               | parāvit           | <i>he prepared</i>        |
| dē (with Abl.)     | <i>about</i>                     | quinguāgēsīnus,   |                           |
| narrāvit           | <i>told [narrated]</i>           | a, um             | <i>fiftieth</i>           |
| primus, a, um      | <i>first (for Abl. cf. § 10)</i> | cōpia (plural)    | <i>forces</i>             |
| ante Chr. nātum    | <i>cf. § 10</i>                  | transportāvit     | <i>he transported</i>     |
| bellō              | <i>I wage war</i>                | nāvigāvit         | <i>he sailed</i>          |
| postquam           | <i>after, when</i>               | quō               | <i>whither, to which</i>  |
| Nerviī             | <i>a tribe in Belgium</i>        | applicāvit        | <i>he brought to land</i> |
| dē-bellāvit        | <i>he defeated</i>               | diū               | <i>long</i>               |
| contrā (with Acc.) | <i>against</i>                   | disputāvērunt     | <i>have disputed</i>      |

|                                 |                          |                 |                        |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| ad nāvigia                      | <i>for vessels to be</i> | parāvērunt      | <i>(they) prepared</i> |
| applicanda                      | <i>brought to land</i>   | sē              | <i>themselves</i>      |
| idōneus, a, um                  | <i>fitted, suitable</i>  | necesse         | <i>necessary</i>       |
| Dubrās*                         | <i>to Dover</i>          | Rōmānis (Dat.)  | <i>for the Ro-</i>     |
| armātus, a, um                  | <i>armed</i>             |                 | <i>mans</i>            |
| alius (irregular in declension) | <i>another</i>           | ad ancorās dē-  | <i>to fasten to</i>    |
| fuērunt                         | <i>were</i>              | ligāre          | <i>anchors,</i>        |
| per (with Acc.)                 | <i>along</i>             |                 | <i>to anchor</i>       |
| properāvērunt                   | <i>hastened</i>          | vadum           | <i>shallow place</i>   |
| pugna                           | <i>fight, battle</i>     | equitāvērunt    | <i>they rode</i>       |
| ad pugnam                       | <i>for battle</i>        | cōpiam dederunt | <i>they gave an</i>    |
|                                 |                          |                 | <i>opportunity</i>     |

\*The Accusative of the name of a Town without a Preposition sometimes means 'to—'; cf. Rule, §22.

### Perfect Tense of 'sum' and 1st Conjugation.

|            | SINGULAR.   | PLURAL.                       |
|------------|---|-------------------------------|
| 1st PERSON | fuī, <i>I was</i>                                     | fuimus, <i>we were</i>        |
| 2nd PERSON | fuistī, <i>thou wast</i><br>( <i>you were</i> )       | fuistis, <i>you were</i>      |
| 3rd PERSON | fuit, <i>he (she, it) was</i>                         | fuērunt, <i>they were</i>     |
| 1st PERSON | spectāvī, <i>I saw</i>                                | spectāvimus, <i>we saw</i>    |
| 2nd PERSON | spectāvistī, <i>thou sawest</i><br>( <i>you saw</i> ) | spectāvistis, <i>you saw</i>  |
| 3rd PERSON | spectāvit, <i>he (she, it) saw</i>                    | spectāvērunt, <i>they saw</i> |

NOTES. I.—The Perfect may often be translated *I have been*, *I have seen*, etc.; virī doctī disputāvērunt, *learned men have disputed*.

2.—The verbs 'dō,' *I give*, and 'stō,' *I stand*, unlike other verbs of the 1st Conjugation, make the Perfects 'ded-ī,' *I gave*, 'stet-ī,' *I stood*; but the endings (-ī, -istī, -it, -imus, -istis, -ērunt) are the same as in other Perfects; thus 'ded-ērunt,' *they gave*.

## § 25.

*¶* In this and the following Preparations new verbs of the 1st Conj., Perfect Tense, will be given in the 1st Person Singular of the Present.

|                    |                                   |                  |   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|---|
| adventāverāmus     | <i>we had arrived</i>             | nisi             | <i>unless, if . . not</i>                     |
| hīc                | <i>here</i>                       | ignāvus, a, um   | <i>cowardly</i>                               |
| campus             | <i>the plain</i>                  | certē            | <i>at any rate</i>                            |
| apertus, a, um     | <i>open</i>                       | officium         | <i>duty</i>                                   |
| ad cōpiās          | <i>for forces</i>                 | praestō          | <i>I perform</i>                              |
| explicandās        | <i>to be deployed</i>             | congregāverant   | <i>had gathered</i>                           |
| illic              | <i>yonder</i>                     | impigrē          | <i>actively,</i><br><i>bravely</i>            |
| fortasse           | <i>perhaps</i>                    | confūsus, a, um, | <i>confused</i>                               |
| piscātōrius, a, um | <i>fishing</i>                    | primō            | <i>at first</i>                               |
| dēligāverat        | <i>had fastened</i>               | labōrō           | <i>I labour, am in</i><br><i>difficulties</i> |
| col-locāverant     | <i>had placed</i><br>[located]    | tandem           | <i>at length</i>                              |
| incitāverant       | <i>had urged</i><br>[incited]     | prōpulsō         | <i>I drive off</i>                            |
| reliquus, a, um    | <i>the rest</i>                   | occupō           | <i>I seize [occupy]</i>                       |
| dubitō             | <i>I hesitate</i><br>[doubt]      | fuga             | <i>flight</i>                                 |
| aquili-fer         | <i>the eagle-bearer</i>           | dederant         | <i>had given</i>                              |
| aquila             | <i>the eagle</i>                  | numquam          | <i>never</i>                                  |
| congregō           | <i>I gather</i> [con-<br>gregate] | anteā            | <i>before</i>                                 |
|                    |                                   | steterant        | <i>had stood</i>                              |
|                    |                                   | laudandus, a, um | <i>laudable</i>                               |

### Pluperfect Tense of 'sum' and 1st Conjugation.

|            | SINGULAR.  | PLURAL.                            |
|------------|--|------------------------------------|
| 1st PERSON | fueram, <i>I had been</i>                                      | fuerāmus, <i>we had been</i>       |
| 2nd PERSON | fuerās, <i>thou hadst been</i><br>( <i>you had been</i> )      | fuerātis, <i>you had been</i>      |
| 3rd PERSON | fuerat, <i>he (she, it) had been</i>                           | fuerant, <i>they had been</i>      |
| 1st PERSON | spectāveram, <i>I had seen</i>                                 | spectāverāmus, <i>we had seen</i>  |
| 2nd PERSON | spectāverās, <i>thou hadst seen</i><br>( <i>you had seen</i> ) | spectāverātis, <i>you had seen</i> |
| 3rd PERSON | spectāverat, <i>he (she, it) had</i><br><i>seen</i>            | spectāverant, <i>they had seen</i> |

## § 26.

After this Preparation new verbs of the 1st Conjugation, Pluperfect Tense, will be given in the 1st Person Singular of the Present.

|                 |                                    |                                       |                                   |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| postulō         | <i>I demand</i>                    | satiātus, a, um                       | <i>satisfied</i>                  |
| septimus, a, um | <i>seventh</i>                     | mora                                  | <i>delay</i>                      |
| rubr-<br>um     | <i>red</i>                         | fuerit                                | <i>will have been</i>             |
| recreāverimus   | <i>we shall have<br/>refreshed</i> | quandō                                | <i>when?</i>                      |
| nōs             | <i>ourselves</i>                   | per (with Acc.)                       | <i>through, during</i>            |
| domum           | <i>homewards,<br/>home</i>         | quinque                               | <i>five</i>                       |
| adventāverimus  | <i>we shall have<br/>arrived</i>   | alter, altera,<br>alterum             | <i>a second, an-<br/>other</i>    |
| intereā         | <i>meanwhile</i>                   | (irregular in Gen.<br>and Dat. Sing.) |                                   |
| mī Antōnī       | <i>my (dear)<br/>Anthony</i>       | recreāverō                            | <i>I shall have<br/>refreshed</i> |
| exspectāverit   | <i>will have<br/>expected</i>      | mē                                    | <i>myself</i>                     |
|                 |                                    | cachinnō                              | <i>I laugh</i>                    |
|                 |                                    | mox                                   | <i>soon</i>                       |

### Future Perfect of 'sum' and 1st Conjugation.

| SINGULAR.  | PLURAL.                                  |
|--|--|
| fuerō, <i>I shall have been</i>  | fuerimus, <i>we shall have been</i>      |
| fueris, <i>thou wilt have been</i><br>( <i>you will have been</i> )      | fueritis, <i>you will have been</i>      |
| fuerit, <i>he (she, it) will have been</i>                               | fuerint, <i>they will have been</i>      |
| spectāverō, <i>I shall have seen</i>                                     | spectāverimus, <i>we shall have seen</i> |
| spectāveris, <i>thou wilt have seen</i><br>( <i>you will have seen</i> ) | spectāveritis, <i>you will have seen</i> |
| spectāverit, <i>he (she, it) will have seen</i>                          | spectāverint, <i>they will have seen</i> |

## VIII. First expedition of C. Julius Caesar.

§ 27. ~~28~~ From this point onwards all new verbs of the 1st Conjugation will be given in the 1st Person Singular of the Present.

|                 |                          |                  |                           |
|-----------------|--------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| expeditiō       | <i>expedition</i>        | inquimus         | <i>we say</i>             |
| Caesaris*       | <i>of Caesar</i>         | prōconsul        | <i>proconsul</i>          |
| calor           | <i>heat</i>              | tiēs             | <i>three</i>              |
| sōlis           | <i>of the sun</i>        | nātiōnēs         | <i>tribes [nations]</i>   |
| āeris           | <i>of the air</i>        | duodēssexāgēsīm- | <i>fifty eighth, lit.</i> |
| neque           | <i>nor (and . . not)</i> | us, a, um        | <i>2 from both</i>        |
| paulō post      | <i>a little after</i>    | Caesarem prō-    | <i>had created</i>        |
| sōlem obscurāv- |                          | consulem cre-    | <i>Caesar pro-</i>        |
| ērunt           | <i>obscured the sun</i>  | āverant          | <i>consul</i>             |
| imber           | <i>a shower</i>          | autem            | <i>however</i>            |
| sōl             | <i>the sun</i>           | esse             | <i>to be</i>              |
| splendōre †     | <i>with splendour</i>    | ex-istimō        | <i>I consider</i>         |
| iterum          | <i>a second time</i>     |                  | <i>[estimate]</i>         |
| calōrem temper- | <i>had tempered</i>      | rēvērā           | <i>really</i>             |
| āverat          | <i>the heat</i>          | ex nātiōnibus    | <i>of the tribes</i>      |
| dē Caesare *    | <i>about Caesar</i>      | auxilium         | <i>help, aid</i>          |
| imperātore      | <i>general</i>           | auxilia (plur.)  | <i>auxiliaries</i>        |
|                 | <i>[emperor]</i>         | subministrō      | <i>I supply</i>           |
| interrogō       | <i>I ask, enquire</i>    | Trinobantēs      | <i>a British tribe</i>    |
| cūr             | <i>why</i>               |                  | <i>in Essex</i>           |
| expeditiōnem    | <i>he prepared his</i>   | Cassī, 2         | <i>a tribe in Herts</i>   |
| suam parāvit    | <i>expedition</i>        | implorō          | <i>I implore</i>          |

\* The letter *C* before Julius Caesar stands for *Gāius* (*Gāium*, *Gāi*, *Gāiō*).

† Note the Ablative without a Preposition, here meaning 'with'; cf. §15, 17, 20.

### Third Declension.

NOUNS LIKE 'CAESAR,' 'EXPEDITIO,' ETC.

| SINGULAR. |                           | PLURAL.                       |
|-----------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1         | Caesar, Caesar            | Caesar-ēs, Caesars            |
| 2         | Caesar, o Caesar          | Caesar-ēs, o Caesars          |
| 3         | Caesar-em, Caesar         | Caesar-ēs, Caesars            |
| 4         | Caesar-is, Caesar's       | Caesar-um, of Caesars         |
| 5         | Caesar-ī, to Caesar       | Caesar-ibus, to Caesars       |
| 6         | cum Caesar-e, with Caesar | cum Caesar-ibus, with Caesars |

So are declined words like 'āer,' *air*, 'sōl,' *sun*, and many words ending in *or*, such as 'calor,' *heat*, 'splendor,' *splendour*, 'imperātor,' *commander-in-chief*. So too are declined words like 'expeditiō,' *expedition*, except that they have dropped an 'n' in the Nominative Singular : thus we have—

|      | SINGULAR.     |  | PLURAL.            |
|------|---------------|--|--------------------|
| 1, 2 | expeditiō     |  | expeditiōn-ēs      |
| 3    | expeditiōn-em |  | expeditiōn-ēs      |
| 4    | expeditiōn-is |  | expeditiōn-um      |
| 5    | expeditiōn-i  |  | expeditiōn-ibus    |
| 6 in | expeditiōn-e  |  | in expeditiōn-ibus |

(Many words ending in *ō*, especially those ending in *dō* and *gō*, have also a change of vowel in the stem : see next section, note).

Nouns of the 3rd Declension in *iō*, *dō*, or *gō* are nearly all feminine, except when they denote male persons. The other nouns declined like *Caesar* are mostly masculine, especially those ending in *or*.

### § 28.

|                   |                         |                                    |                          |
|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| avāritia          | <i>avarice</i>          | venia                              | <i>pardon</i>            |
| exspectātiō       | <i>expectation</i>      | ā victōr-ibus                      | <i>from the victors</i>  |
| praeda            | <i>booty ; cf. § 7</i>  | ullus, a, um                       | <i>any</i>               |
| cupidus, a, um    | <i>desirous</i>         | (irregular in Gen. and Dat. Sing.) |                          |
| vīsitiandī        | <i>of visiting</i>      | nisi                               | <i>except ; cf. § 25</i> |
| explōrandī        | <i>of exploring</i>     | paucī, ae, a                       | <i>a few</i>             |
| ignōtus, a, um    | <i>unknown</i>          | proximus, a, um                    | <i>next ; cf. § 16</i>   |
| remōtus, a, um    | <i>remote</i>           | multō māiōr-em                     | <i>much greater,</i>     |
| ignōtum           | <i>an unknown</i>       |                                    | <i>lit. greater</i>      |
|                   | <i>thing</i>            |                                    | <i>by much</i>           |
| prō (with Abl.)   | <i>for, instead of</i>  | sescentī, ae, a                    | <i>six hundred</i>       |
| prō magnificō est | <i>is regarded as a</i> | onerārius, a, um                   | <i>of burden</i>         |
|                   | <i>magnificent</i>      | legiōn-ēs                          | <i>legions</i>           |
|                   | <i>thing</i>            | cum multi-                         | <i>with a multi-</i>     |
| com-parō          | <i>I get together</i>   | tūdīn-e *                          | <i>tude</i>              |
| re-portō          | <i>I carry off</i>      |                                    |                          |

\* Note that the stem of this word differs from the Nominative Singular not only in having an *n*, but also in the change of vowel : Nominative Singular *multitūdō*, stem *multitūdīn-*.

## IX. Peace violated.

§ 29. In the following Preparation each new noun of the 3rd declension will be given only once (in the Nominative Singular, with the stem added in brackets whenever it differs from the Nominative Singular).

|                     |                    |                      |                        |
|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| pāx (pāc-), 3       | peace              | rēmigandī            | of rowing              |
| violātus, a, uni    | violated           | virtūs (virtūt-), 3  | pluck [virtue]         |
| violō               | I violate          | magnopere            | greatly                |
| aestās (aestāt-), 3 | summer             | (cf. quantopere      | how much)              |
| quartus, a, um      | fourth             | prior (priōr-), 3    | former                 |
| dux (duc-), 3       | leader [duke]      | inde                 | thence                 |
| miles (milit-), 3   | soldier [military] | trecentī, ae, a      | three hundred          |
| eques (equit-), 3   | horse-soldier      | castra †, 2          | camp                   |
| tempestās           | weather            | statiō (statiōn-), 3 | station                |
| (tempestāt-), 3     | [tempest]          | in statiōne          | on guard               |
| medius, a, um       | mid *              | reservō              | I reserve              |
| nāvigātiō (nāvigā-  | voyage [naviga     | periculōsus, a, um   | dangerous              |
| tiōn-), 3           | tion]              | dēfensor (dēfen-     | defender               |
| nōn iam flābat      | no longer blew     | sōr-), 3 †           |                        |
| prosperē            | successfully,      | nūdāre               | to strip (cf.          |
|                     | prosperously       |                      | incitare, to urge on ; |
| labor (labōr-), 3   | labour, toil       |                      | spectāre, § 8 ; § 12)  |

\* In mediā nāvigātiōne, literally in mid voyage ; but we should generally say in English in the middle of the voyage.

† A neuter plural noun of the 2nd declension, with singular meaning.

‡ Note the Ablative without a Preposition, properly meaning 'from,' but here to be translated by 'of' ; so in § 12 and § 6 we might translate *liber scholīs* 'free of lessons,' and *militiā vacat* 'he is free of service.'

## Third Declension—continued.

NOUNS LIKE 'PAX,' 'AESTAS,' etc.

A great many nouns of the 3rd Declension differ from those already learned by adding an *s* to the Nominative Singular ; thus from the stem 'pāc-' we get the Nominative Singular 'pāc-s' (written with the letter *x* for *cs*) ; but the other cases are formed from the stem 'pāc-.' When the stem ends in a *t* (or *d*), this letter disappears in the Nominative Singular when the *s* is added, but not in the other cases. Thus we decline—

|          |           |          |           |
|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| 1, 2 pāx | aestā-s   | mīle-s   | virtū-s   |
| 3 pāc-em | aestāt-em | milit-em | virtūt-em |
| 4 pāc-is | aestāt-is | milit-is | virtūt-is |
| etc.     | etc.      | etc.     | etc.      |



Nouns of the 3rd Declension that form the Nominative Singular by adding *s* to the stem are mostly feminine, except those which denote male persons, like 'mīles,' *soldier*, and a few others.

## § 30.

## X. Varied contests.

|                              |  |                               |   |
|------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|---|
| certāmen<br>(certāmin-), 3 * | <i>contest</i>                             | tempus<br>(tempor-), 3 *      | <i>time</i><br>[tempor-ary]                         |
| vītō                         | <i>I avoid</i>                             | agger, 3                      | <i>mound</i>  |
| flūmen<br>(flūmin-), 3 *     | <i>river</i>                               | testūdō (testū-<br>din-), 3   | <i>tortoise-shell,</i><br><i>shelter</i> †          |
| ēgregiē                      | <i>excellently</i>                         | oppugnō                       | <i>I attack</i>                                     |
| opus (oper-), 3 *            | <i>work</i> [oper-ate]                     | vulnus<br>(vulner-), 3 *      | <i>wound</i><br>[vulner-able]                       |
| firmō                        | <i>I strengthen</i><br>[make firm]         | pondus<br>(ponder-), 3 *      | <i>weight</i><br>[ponder-able]                      |
| nōmen<br>(nōmin-), 3 *       | <i>name</i><br>[nomin-ate]                 | arma<br>(neut. plur.), 2      | <i>arms</i>   |
| constat                      | <i>is known</i>                            | superō                        | <i>I surpass</i>                                    |
| domesticus, a um             | <i>civil</i><br>[domestic]                 | magnitūdō<br>(magnitūdin-), 3 | <i>size, magnitude</i>                              |
| prae-parō                    | <i>I prepare</i>                           | rōbur<br>(rōbor-), 3 *        | <i>strength</i><br>[cor-robor-ate]                  |
| arbor, 3, fem.               | <i>tree</i>                                | corpus<br>(corpor-), 3 *      | <i>body</i><br>[corpor-al]                          |
| vallum, 2                    | <i>rampart</i>                             | homō (homin-), 3              | <i>man</i>  |
| prō-volō                     | <i>I dash forth</i><br>cf. volitō, §7      | rōbustō cor-<br>pore ‡        | <i>of</i> (lit. <i>with</i> )<br><i>robust body</i> |
| mūnitiō, 3                   | <i>bulwark</i>                             |                               |   |
| aliquantum                   | <i>a lot, a consider-<br/>able amount.</i> |                               |   |

\* The nouns in this section in *men*, *us*, and *ur* are Neuters, and therefore have the Accusative the same as the Nominative. Note, too, the Nominative and Accusative plural in *a*.

† The *testudo* was an arrangement of the shields of the soldiers when they attacked a fort; it looked like a tortoise-shell.

‡ Note the Ablative without a Preposition, here translatable by 'of'; the Ablative here denotes a *quality* of the persons spoken of, and may be therefore called an Adjectival Ablative.

## Third Declension—continued.

## NOUNS LIKE 'FLUMEN,' 'OPUS,' 'TEMPUS.'

Neuters ending in *men* have stems ending in *min-* from which the other cases are formed. Neuters ending in *us* have stems in *er-* or *or-*. The last vowel of these stems is *always short*.

Note that the Neuters have the Accusative the same as the Nominative, both in the Singular and in the Plural Number (as in 2nd Declension), and that their Nominative and Accusative Plural end in *a* (also as in the 2nd Declension).

|         | SING.       | PLUR.          | SING.     | PLUR.        |
|---------|-------------|----------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1, 2, 3 | flūmen      | flūmin-a       | opus      | oper-a       |
| 4       | flūmin-is   | flūmin-um      | oper-is   | oper-um      |
| 5       | flūmin-ī    | flūmin-ibus    | oper-ī    | oper-ibus    |
| 6       | in flūmin e | in flūmin-ibus | in oper-e | in oper-ibus |

## § 31.

|                     |                                      |                          |                         |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| prō-sum             | <i>I am helpful,<br/>do good</i>     | insectātiō<br>(-iōn-), 3 | <i>pursuit</i>          |
| fugō                | <i>I put to flight</i>               | revocāre                 | <i>to recall</i>        |
| fugātus, a, um      | <i>routed</i>                        | novus, a, um             | <i>new</i>              |
| in-stō              | <i>I pursue (lit.<br/>step upon)</i> | arma (Neut.<br>Pl., 2)   | <i>here fittings</i>    |
| (with Dat.)         |                                      | ornandus, a, um          | <i>to be equipped</i>   |
| ignōrō              | <i>I do not know<br/>[ignore]</i>    | (from ornō               | <i>I equip, adorn)</i>  |
| praetereā           | <i>besides</i>                       | magnō opere              | <i>= magnopere,</i>     |
| incommodum, 2       | <i>disaster</i>                      | (Abl. of opus)           | § 29                    |
| nuntiō              | <i>I announce</i>                    | diurnus, a, um           | <i>of the day</i>       |
| tempestās (tāt-), 3 | <i>tempest</i>                       | nocturnus, a, um         | <i>of the night</i>     |
| litus (lītor-), 3   | <i>coast</i>                         | sine (with Abl.)         | <i>without</i>          |
| afflictō            | <i>wreck [afflict]</i>               | reparāre                 | <i>to refit, repair</i> |

## § 32.

## XI. Roman ships.

|                                   |  |                                 |                             |
|-----------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| genus (gener-), 3                 | <i>kind [gener-al]</i>                   | octingentī, ae, a               | <i>eight hundred</i>        |
| nāvis (Gen. Pl.<br>nāvium), 3     | <i>ship [nav-y]</i>                      | hiems (hiem-), 3                | <i>winter</i>               |
| nāvis longa                       | <i>ship of war</i>                       | inter                           | <i>here among</i>           |
| classis (Gen. Pl.<br>classium), 3 | <i>fleet</i>                             | ducentī, ae, a                  | <i>two hundred</i>          |
| onus (oner-), 3                   | <i>burden [oner-ous]</i>                 | opus (with<br>Abl.)             | <i>need (of)</i>            |
| transportandus, a,<br>um          | <i>to be trans-<br/>ported</i>           | quōmodō                         | <i>how</i>                  |
| ad onera trans-<br>portanda       | <i>for burdens to<br/>be transported</i> | hostis (Gen. Pl.<br>hostium), 3 | <i>enemy<br/>[host-ile]</i> |

Third Declension—*Continued.*

Most nouns of two syllables belonging to the 3rd Decl. and ending in *is* have the same form for the Genitive as for the Nominative Singular, and form the Genitive Plural in *ium*: thus 'nāvis,' *ship*, 'classis,' *fleet*, 'hostis,' *enemy*. These nouns are mostly feminine, except those denoting male persons, like 'hostis.'

| SINGULAR. |         | PLURAL.    |
|-----------|---------|------------|
| 1, 2      | nāvis   | nāvēs      |
| 3         | nāvem   | nāvēs      |
| 4         | nāvis   | nāvium     |
| 5         | nāvī    | nāvibus    |
| 6         | in nāve | in nāvibus |

Note that all these forms are of two syllables except the Genitive, the Dative, and the Ablative of the Plural. The Gen. Plur. has one syllable more than the Nom. Sing., as in §§ 27-31.

NOTE.—Similarly are declined some nouns whose Nominative Singular ends in *ēs*, e.g., 'clādēs,' *disaster*.

## § 33.

|                     |                              |                        |                         |
|---------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
| ornāre              | <i>to equip</i>              | līnum, 2               | <i>flax</i>             |
| forma, 1            | <i>form, shape</i>           | quia                   | <i>because</i>          |
| puppis, 3 *         | <i>stern, poop</i>           | plūs . . quam          | <i>more . . than</i>    |
| accommodātus, a, um | <i>suited [accommodated]</i> | firmitūdō (-tūdin-), 3 | <i>firmness</i>         |
| carīna, 1           | <i>keel</i>                  | līneus, a, um          | <i>made of flax</i>     |
| plānus, a, um       | <i>flat [plane]</i>          | tam . . quam           | <i>so . . as</i>        |
| rōbur (rōbor-), 3   | <i>here oak</i>              | rostrum, 2             | <i>beak, ram</i>        |
| ferreus, a, um      | <i>made of iron</i>          | turris, 3 *            | <i>turret</i>           |
| fūnis, 3 *          | <i>rope</i>                  | lāmīna, 1              | <i>plate</i>            |
| pellis, 3 *         | <i>skin, hide</i>            | quid opus              | <i>what need</i>        |
| sīve . . . sīve     | <i>whether . . . or</i>      | tormentum, 2           | <i>a machine for</i>    |
| propter (with Acc.) | <i>on account of</i>         |                        | <i>hurling stones †</i> |

\* This word is declined like 'nāvis,' § 32.

† The Roman 'tormentum' corresponds to our cannon.

## §34. XII. Alliance of the British tribes.

|                    |                        |                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| societās           | <i>alliance</i>        | finis, 3 *         | <i>end</i>             |
| (societāt-), 3     | [ <i>society</i> ]     | finēs, Plur., m.   | <i>boundaries</i>      |
| summus, a, um      | <i>chief</i>           | sēparō             | <i>I separate</i>      |
| imperium, 2        | <i>command</i>         | oriens(orient-), 3 | <i>the East†</i>       |
| mandō              | <i>I entrust</i>       |                    | [ <i>orient-al</i> ]   |
| rēx (rēg-), 3      | <i>king</i>            | occidens           | <i>the West</i>        |
| gens (gent-), 3    | <i>race</i> [gen-tile] | (occident-), 3     | [ <i>occident-al</i> ] |
| Gen. Pl. gentium   |                        | superior           | <i>previous, past</i>  |
| princeps (-cip-, 3 | <i>prince</i>          | (superiōr-), 3     |                        |
| tamen              | <i>nevertheless</i>    | continuus, a, um   | <i>continued, un-</i>  |
| pars (part-), 3    | <i>part</i>            |                    | <i>interrupted</i>     |
| consociō           | <i>I ally</i>          | infinītus, a, um   | <i>infinite</i>        |

\*Declined like 'nāvis,' § 32.

†'ab oriente' is literally *from the East*; hence *on the East side, on the East*. Similarly, 'ab occidente,' *on the West*.

## Third Declension—Continued.

Words whose stem ends in two consonants form the Genitive Plural in *ium* (two syllables more than the Nom. Sing.): thus 'gens' (stem 'gent-') *race*, 'pars' ('part-'), *part*.

Notice that if the stem ends in a *t*, it is dropped before the *s* which is added to form the Nominative Singular, as in § 29; thus 'gens' stands for 'gent-s'; 'pars' for 'part-s.'

The Nouns whose stem ends in two consonants are mostly feminine, like other Nouns that form the Nominative Singular by adding *s* to the stem (§ 29).

| SINGULAR. |            | PLURAL.       |
|-----------|------------|---------------|
| 1, 2      | * gen-s    | gent-ēs       |
| 3         | gent-em    | gent-ēs       |
| 4         | gent-is    | gent-ium      |
| 5         | gent-ī     | gent-ibus     |
| 6         | cum gent-e | cum gent-ibus |

But 'urbs' (stem 'urb-'), *city*, which will be found in the next section, does not drop any letter before the *s* of the Nominative Singular; it is only a *t* or a *d* that is dropped before the *s*.

## § 35.

|                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| caput (capit-), 3, n. | <i>chapter</i>       |
| duodecimus, a, um     | <i>twelfth</i>       |
| tertius decimus       | <i>thirteenth</i>    |
| interior (-iōr-), 3   | <i>interior</i>      |
| Belgium, 2            | <i>Belgium</i>       |
| immigrō               | <i>I immigrate</i>   |
| aetās (-tāt-), 3      | <i>age</i>           |
| trans (with Acc.)     | <i>across</i>        |
| Rhēnus, 2             | <i>the Rhine</i>     |
| migrō                 | <i>I migrate</i>     |
| urbs (urb-), 3        | <i>city</i> [urb-an] |
| dērivātus, a, um      | <i>derived</i>       |

|                    |                         |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| dē-monstrō         | <i>I point out</i>      |
| orīgō (orīgīn-), 3 | <i>origin</i>           |
| triquetrus, a, um  | <i>triangular</i>       |
| esse dēclārō       | <i>I declare to be*</i> |
| latus (later-), 3  | <i>side</i> [later-al]  |
| Hispānia, 1        | <i>Spain</i>            |
| septentrionēs      | <i>the North</i> †      |
| errō               | <i>I err</i>            |
| Hibernia, 1        | <i>Ireland</i>          |
| rectē              | <i>rightly</i>          |
| iūdicō             | <i>I judge</i>          |
| Mōna, 1            | <i>Anglesey</i>         |

\* C. § 27, l. 16 esse existimābant.

† lit. *the seven oxen* (Charles Wain).

## § 36.

## XIII. The British seas.

|                    |                          |                                     |
|--------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| longitūdō          | <i>length</i>            | mare (Abl. Sing. <i>the sea</i>     |
| (-tūdīn-), 3       | [longitude]              | marī), 3, Neut.                     |
| circiter           | <i>about</i>             | di-stāre <i>to be distant</i>       |
| quingentī, ae, a   | <i>five hundred</i>      | igitur <i>therefore, then</i>       |
| mīlia, 3 (Neut.    | <i>miles, lit. thou-</i> | maria <i>seas</i>                   |
| Plur. of 'mille,'  | <i>sands (of paces)</i>  | circum-dō <i>I surround</i>         |
| a thousand)        |                          | Hibernicus, a, um <i>Irish</i>      |
| septingentī, ae, a | <i>seven hundred</i>     | marium <i>of the seas</i>           |
| octingentī, ae, a  | <i>eight hundred</i>     | ūsītātus, a, um <i>used, usual,</i> |
| octōgintā          | <i>eighty</i>            | <i>common</i>                       |

## Third Declension—continued.

Nouns ending in *e* like 'mare,' *sea*, of the 3rd Declension are Neuter. They form the Genitive Plural in *ium*, the Nominative and Accusative Plural in *ia*, and the Ablative Singular (like the Dative Singular) in *i*. Thus

| SINGULAR. |         | PLURAL. |            |
|-----------|---------|---------|------------|
| 1, 2, 3   | mare    |         | maria      |
| 4         | maria   |         | marium     |
| 5         | marī    |         | maribus    |
| 6         | in marī |         | in maribus |

## § 37.

## XIV. Britáin subdued.

|                      |  |                       |                                  |
|----------------------|--|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| pācātus, a, um       | <i>subdued</i>   | ordō (-din-), 3       | <i>rank</i>                      |
| concursiō (-iōn-), 3 | <i>engagement</i><br>[ex-cursion]                          | consultō              | [ordin ary]<br><i>on purpose</i> |
| iter (itiner-), 3 *  | <i>march</i>   |                       | [by consultation]                |
| fortiter             | <i>bravely</i>   | essedārius, 2         | <i>charioteer</i>                |
| impugnō              | <i>I attack</i>  | pēs (ped-), 3, m.     | <i>foot</i>                      |
| cohors (cohort-),    | <i>cohort</i>  | pedibus               | <i>on foot</i>                   |
| 3 †                  |  | ita                   | <i>thus</i>                      |
| suī                  | <i>their own men</i>                                       | mōbilitās (-tāt-), 3  | <i>mobility</i>                  |
| perturbō             | <i>I perturb,</i><br><i>throw into</i><br><i>confusion</i> | stabilitās (-tāt-), 3 | <i>stability</i>                 |
|                      |  | pedes (pedit-),       | <i>foot-soldier</i>              |
| mōs (mōr-), 3        | <i>custom</i>  | 3 †                   |                                  |
| iustus, a, um        | <i>just, proper</i>  | praestō (cf. § 25     | <i>I exhibit</i>                 |
| omnēs                | <i>all</i>   | hūiusmodī             | <i>of this kind</i>              |
|                      |  | intervallum, 2        | <i>interval</i>                  |

\* This is a very peculiar word; the Nominative Singular is not formed directly from the stem.

† Declined like 'pars' (stem 'part-'), § 34.

‡ Declined like 'mīles' (stem 'milit-'), 'eques' (stem 'equit-'), § 29.

## § 38.

|                     |   |         |                                     |
|---------------------|---|---------|-------------------------------------|
| collis, 3 *         | <i>hill</i>                                   | servō   | <i>here I watch</i>                 |
| lēgātus, 2          | <i>lieutenant-</i><br><i>general</i> [legate] | paullum | <i>a little</i>                     |
| subitō              | <i>suddenly</i>                               | dēclīnō | <i>I turn aside</i><br>[decline]    |
| superior (cf. § 34) | <i>superior, victor-</i><br><i>ious</i>       | dē viā  | <i>from the road</i>                |
| quattuor            | <i>four</i>                                   | vastō   | <i>I lay waste</i><br>[de-vast-ate] |

\* Declined like 'nāvis,' 'hostis,' § 32.

## § 39.

|                       |                        |                   |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| rīpa, 1               | <i>bank</i>            | palūs (palūd-), 3 | <i>marsh</i>           |
| sulcis, 3 *           | <i>stake</i>           | ovis, 3 *         | <i>sheep</i>           |
| acūtus, a, um         | <i>sharp</i> [acute]   | bōs (bov-), 3 †   | <i>ox</i>              |
| profundus, a, um      | <i>deep</i> [profound] | duābus            | <i>Abl. of duae</i>    |
| caput (capit-), 3, n. | <i>head</i> ; cf. § 35 | expugnō           | <i>I take by storm</i> |
| longē                 | <i>far</i>             | fugō              | <i>I put to flight</i> |

\* Declined like 'nāvis,' § 32.

† This is an irregular word: bōs, bov-em, -is, -ī, -e; Gen. Plur. bo-um.

## § 40.

|                            |                                 |                     |                          |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| prae-sum (with<br>Dat.)    | <i>I am in com-<br/>mand of</i> | dēfectiō (-iōn-), 3 | <i>defection</i>         |
| pugnandi                   | <i>of fighting; cf.</i>         | condiciō (-iōn-), 3 | <i>condition</i>         |
|                            | § 28, l. 3                      | dēliberō            | <i>I deliberate</i>      |
| frustrā                    | <i>in vain</i>                  | vetō                | <i>I forbid</i>          |
| victōrēs                   | <i>= were victors</i>           | vexō                | <i>I annoy, vex</i>      |
| cīvītās (-tāt-), 3         | <i>state [city]</i>             | tribūtum, 2         | <i>tribute</i>           |
| ōrō                        | <i>I ask, entreat</i>           | iniperō             | <i>I impose</i>          |
| confirmō                   | <i>I establish</i>              | (Dat.)              | (upon)                   |
|                            | [confirm]                       | obses (obsid-), 3   | <i>hostage</i>           |
| tot (indeclinable<br>adj.) | <i>so many</i>                  | prō (with Abl.)     | <i>for, on behalf of</i> |
| clādēs, 3 *                | <i>disaster</i>                 |                     | (cf. §§ 28, 33)          |
| maximē                     | <i>chiefly</i>                  | āra, 1              | <i>altar</i>             |
|                            |                                 | focus, 2            | <i>hearth</i>            |
|                            |                                 | tropaeum, 2         | <i>trophy</i>            |

\* This and some other nouns of the 3rd Declension differ from 'nāvis' only in the Nominative Singular; see § 32 (NOTE). In these words the Nominative and Accusative Plural is the same as the Nominative Singular.

## § 41.

## XV. Hearts of oak.

|   |                                |                         |   |
|---|--------------------------------|-------------------------|---|
| aes (aer-), 3, n.                       | <i>brass</i>                   | digitus, 2              | <i>finger [digit]</i>                       |
| triplex (triplic-),<br>3, adj.          | <i>triple</i>                  | monstrans               | <i>pointing</i>                             |
| fortis, 3, adj.                         | <i>brave, strong</i>           | (monstrant-), 3, adj.   |   |
| admīrābilis, 3, adj.                    | <i>admirable</i>               | statiō (-iōn-), 3       | <i>here road-<br/>stead; cf. § 29</i>       |
| insigne, Neuter of<br>insignis, 3, adj. | <i>distinguished</i>           | tūtus, a, um            | <i>safe</i>                                 |
| facinus (facinor-),<br>3                | <i>deed, achieve-<br/>ment</i> | illae                   | <i>yon, those</i>                           |
| quod                                    | <i>that</i>                    | optimē                  | <i>excellently,<br/>here = hurrah</i>       |
| orbis, 3, m.                            | <i>circle [orb]</i>            | adhūc                   | <i>hitherto (hūc =<br/>hither, ad = to)</i> |
| orbis terrārum                          | <i>= the world</i>             | grandis, 3, adj.        | <i>big [grand]</i>                          |
| tam                                     | <i>so (cf. § 33)</i>           | per-grandis, 3,<br>adj. | <i>very big</i>                             |
| mīrus, a, um                            | <i>wonderful</i>               | ōmnis, 3, adj.          | <i>every</i>                                |
| sententia, 1                            | <i>opinion</i>                 | omnēs, Plur.            | <i>all</i>                                  |
| comprobō                                | <i>I approve of</i>            | ariēs (ariet-), 3, m.   | <i>ram</i>                                  |
| nōnus, a, um                            | <i>ninth</i>                   |                         |   |

NOTE.—The heading (Robur et aes triplex) is a quotation from Horace (Odes I. 3, 9) and is here applied both to the courage of the ancient Britons and to the modern ships of war described in this section.

## § 42.

|                                    |                                  |                    |  |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------|--|
| veterānus, a, um                   | <i>veteran, old</i>              | prōpositum, 2      | <i>proposal</i>                                  |
| militō                             | <i>I serve</i>                   | per-grātus, a, um  | <i>very pleasing</i>                             |
| custōs (custōd-), 3                | <i>guard</i>                     | ad nāvīgandum      | <i>for sailing</i>                               |
| Grandis, 3, adj.                   | <i>the Majestic</i>              | dēnegō             | <i>I say no [deny]</i>                           |
| Rēgālis, 3, adj.                   | <i>the Royal Sov-<br/>ereign</i> | omnia, Neut. Pl.   | <i>all things,</i><br>of omnis <i>everything</i> |
| Magnifica, 1, adj.                 | <i>the Magnificent</i>           | dulce, Neut. Sing. | <i>sweet, pleasant</i>                           |
| Tonans (Tonant-)                   | <i>the Thunderer</i>             | of dulcis, 3, adj. |  |
| 3, adj.                            |                                  | lēnis, 3, adj.     | <i>gentle [lenient]</i>                          |
| Arrogans (Arro-<br>gant-), 3, adj. | <i>the Arrogant</i>              | brevī, Abl. Sing.  | <i>brief, short</i><br>of brevis, 3.             |
| Ferox (Ferōc-), 3,                 | <i>the Furious</i>               | adj.               |  |
| adj.                               | <i>lit. warlike</i>              | classiārīi, 2      | <i>seamen, men of<br/>the fleet</i>              |
| tegimen (-min-), 3                 | <i>covering</i>                  | ingens (ingent-),  | <i>huge</i>                                      |
| in Grandī                          | <i>in the Majestic</i>           | 3, adj.            |  |
| (Abl. of Grandis)                  |                                  | māchina            | <i>machine</i>                                   |
| praefectus classis                 | <i>admiral</i>                   |                    |  |
| cūr                                | <i>why</i>                       |                    |  |

## Adjectives of the Third Declension.

Adjectives of the 3rd Declension in *is* are declined :—

(1) in the Masculine and Feminine like 'nāvis' (§ 32),  
**except that the Ablative Singular ends in ī (not -e) :**

(2) in the Neuter like 'mare' (§ 36).

| SINGULAR. |                       |              | PLURAL.               |              |
|-----------|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------------|--------------|
|           | <i>masc. and fem.</i> | <i>neut.</i> | <i>masc. and fem.</i> | <i>neut.</i> |
| 1, 2      | fortis                | forte        | fortēs                | fortia       |
| 3         | fortem                | forte        | fortēs                | fortia       |
| 4         | fortis                | fortis       | fortium               | fortium      |
| 5         | fortī                 | fortī        | fortibus              | fortibus     |
| 6         | fortī                 | fortī        | fortibus              | fortibus     |



Some adjectives of the 3rd Declension which do not end in *is* have no separate form for the Nominative Singular of the Neuter; in the Masculine and Feminine they are declined like 'gens' (§ 34): thus—

| SINGULAR. |                      |              | PLURAL.              |              |
|-----------|----------------------|--------------|----------------------|--------------|
|           | <i>masc and fem.</i> | <i>neut.</i> | <i>masc and fem.</i> | <i>neut.</i> |
| 1, 2      | ingens               | ingens       | ingentēs             | ingentia     |
| 3         | ingentem             | ingens       | ingentēs             | ingentia     |
| 4         | ingentis             | ingentis     | ingentium            | ingentium    |
| 5         | ingentī              | ingentī      | ingentibus           | ingentibus   |
| 6         | ingentī              | ingentī      | ingentibus           | ingentibus   |

## § 43.

|                      |                              |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| adversus, a, um      | <i>adverse</i>               |
| taberna, 1           | <i>inn</i> [tavern]          |
| tenebrae, 1, Plur.   | <i>darkness</i>              |
| lūx (lūc-), 3        | <i>light</i>                 |
| anxius, a, um        | <i>anxious</i>               |
| multa, Neut. Pl.     | <i>many things</i>           |
| of multus            |                              |
| ambulātiō (-iōn-), 3 | <i>walk</i>                  |
| ūtilis, 3, adj.      | <i>useful</i>                |
| vehiculum, 2         | <i>carriage</i><br>[vehicle] |
| nox (noct-), 3       | <i>night</i>                 |

|  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| somniō   | <i>I dream</i>            |
| membris rōbustīs                                 | Abl. *                    |
| terrā marique                                    | <i>by land and by sea</i> |
| pugnans (pugn-<br>ant-), 3, adj.†                | <i>fighting</i>           |
| salvus, a, um                                    | <i>safe</i>               |
| fac (Imperative<br>of 'faciō,'<br><i>I make,</i> | <i>make</i>               |
| māter (mātr-),                                   | <i>mother</i>             |

\* The Abl. is here translatable by 'with'; cf. *rōbustō corpore*, § 30.

† The Adjectives in *-ans* (stem *-ant-*) are declined like *ingens* (stem *ingent-*), the only difference being in the last vowel of the stems.



## DRILL EXERCISES.

[The sections of these drill exercises are numbered to correspond with the sections of the text on which they give practice. All the words occurring in them will be found in the corresponding sections of the "Preparations" (pp. 59 ff.) The Latin sentences may be used for *viva voce* practice, and may be varied at the discretion of the teacher by substituting other words that have been used in the text of the story. They will also serve as models for translating the English sentences that follow them into Latin. *The numbers in brackets in the Exercises refer to sections of the "Preparations," not to sections of the Exercises themselves; and they serve the purpose of an English-Latin Vocabulary. Thus in Ex. 4 (p. 107) the reference to § 2 after the word 'for' means that the Latin word wanted will be found in § 2 of the Preparations (p. 61).]*

§1. (*Nominative and Ablative Singular.*)

Villa est bella.

Castanea est bella.

Ancilla in villā habitat.

Ora maritima non procul a<sup>1</sup> villā est.

Non procul ab orā maritimā habito.

Sub castaneā interdum canto.

---

How pretty is the chestnut-tree !

Not far from the chestnut-tree a nightingale sings.

Not far from the country-house is the sea-shore.<sup>2</sup>

Not far from the sea-shore is the chestnut-tree.

In the country-house I now live.

---

<sup>1</sup> *ā* is used for *ab* before a consonant.

<sup>2</sup> **ORDER OF WORDS, RULE I.**—Put the Adjective immediately **AFTER** its Noun. The English order is just the opposite; thus where English says 'a pretty house,' Latin says 'a house pretty'; where English says 'the sea-shore' or 'the maritime shore' Latin says 'the shore maritime.' This rule applies also to Possessive Adjectives, like 'my,' 'your,' 'his,' 'our,' 'their': thus where English says 'my aunt' Latin says 'aunt mine.' But the rule does not apply to Adjectives used with the verb 'to be,' as in 'the country-house is pretty' or 'how pretty the country-house is !'

§1 *continued. (Genitive Singular.)*

Amita mea sub umbrā castaneae interdum cantat.

Cum amitā meā sub umbrā castaneae interdum canto.

Ancilla amitae meae in villā habitat.

Ancilla in villā amitae meae habitat.

Ianua non procul ab orā maritimā est.

My aunt's country house is pretty.

The door of the country-house is not far from the sea-shore.<sup>1</sup>

Where is the nightingale?

The nightingale sometimes sings under the shade of the chestnut-tree.

The nightingale does not live (say *not lives*) in the chestnut tree.

*After §1. Conversation.*

Q. Ubi est villa?

A. Villa non procul ab orā maritimā est.

Q. Ubi est castanea?

A. Castanea in areā est.

<sup>1</sup>ORDER OF WORDS, RULE 2.—Put the Adverb BEFORE the Verb or other word which it qualifies. The English order is often different; thus where English says 'sings well' Latin says 'well sings.' English may say 'sings sometimes' or 'sometimes sings,' but Latin always says 'sometimes sings.' This rule applies to the Adverb *non*, which must always come *immediately* before the word which it negatives; and it also applies to Adverbial phrases formed with Prepositions, such as 'far from the sea-shore', 'under the shade of the chestnut-tree'; thus for 'the nightingale sings under the shade of the chestnut-tree' say 'the nightingale under the shade of the chestnut-tree sings'.

Q. Ubi ancilla cenam parat?

A. Ancilla sub umbrā castaneae cenam interdum parat.

Q. Ancilla in villā habitat?<sup>1</sup>

A. Ancilla in villā habitat.

§ 2. (*Nominative Plural.*)

Scaphae non procul a villā sunt.

Feriae sunt beatae.

Beatae sunt feriae.

Magnae sunt procellae in orā maritimā.

Nautae procul ab orā maritimā sunt.

Nautae in scaphā sunt.

Scapha non magna est.

Where are the boats?

The boats are on the sand.

Sailors live not far from the sand of the sea-shore.

I sometimes sail in a boat with a sailor.

Chains are in the boat.

Anchors and chains are on the sea-shore.

§ 2 *continued.* (*Genitive Plural.*)

Scaphae nautarum interdum magnae sunt.

Ancorae scapharum magnarum magnae sunt.

Ancorae scaphiarum non magnarum non magnae sunt.

<sup>1</sup> Questions may be asked in conversational Latin, as in English, simply by changing the tone of the voice, and without any interrogative particle ; e.g. 'vis pugnare?' *you want to fight?* (Plautus, *Rudens* 1011). This is very common in Plautus and Terence. But it is easy to introduce the particle '-ne' to the pupil from the first, if the teacher prefers ; e.g. *Habitatne ancilla in villā?*

The boats of the sailors are not far from the door of the country-house.

The anchors of the boats are on the sand.

The anchors and the chains of the anchors are on the sand.

The inhabitants of country-houses are not sailors.

The courage of the inhabitants of the sea-shore is great.

§ 3. (*Ablative Plural.*)

Scaphae in undis sunt.

Undae sub scaphis sunt

In scaphis sunt nautae.

Procella est : undae non caeruleae sunt.

Nautae in undis non caeruleis navigant.

Nautae in casis albis habitant.

Sailors often sail in boats.

I often sail with the sailors.

Not far from the windows of the cottages are the waves of the sea-shore.

My aunt is often<sup>1</sup> in the cottages of the farmers.

There-is<sup>2</sup> a wood not far from the cottages of the farmers.

§ 3 continued. (*Accusative Singular and Plural after a Preposition*)

Ante villam est arena.

Ante casas nautarum est ora maritima.

Ora maritima prope villam amitae meae est.

Prope casas agricolarum est silva.

Post cenam in scaphā non navigo.

Post ferias procul ab orā maritimā habito.

<sup>1</sup> See Rule 2 (Order of Words).

<sup>2</sup> 'There-is' and 'there-are' must be translated simply by the verb: say *not far from the cottages is a wood.*

Before the door of the country-house is the sand of the sea-shore.  
Near the wood are the cottages of the farmers.  
During the holidays I sometimes sail in boats.  
After the holidays I do not stay<sup>1</sup> in the country-house of my aunt.  
Before the holidays I do not sail in boats.

---

§ 3 *continued.* (*Accusative Singular and Plural depending on a Verb.*)

Villam ex orā maritimā specto.  
Fenestras villae ex orā maritimā specto.  
In arenā scapham et ancoras et catenas specto.  
In silvā plantas et herbas specto.  
Plantas et herbas amo : bacas amo.  
Nautae casas albas amant.  
Casae albae nautas delectant.

---

I love the sand.<sup>2</sup>  
I love the sand of the sea-shore.  
I love boats and anchors and chains  
Waves delight sailors.  
Plants delight my aunt.  
My aunt loves sailors and farmers.  
From the windows of the cottages the sailors see the waves.  
Boats delight sailors : sailors love boats.  
Before the holidays I do not see boats and the sea-shore.

---

<sup>1</sup> 'I do not stay' is an English way of saying 'I stay not'; in Latin there will be only one word for 'I do stay,' and the word for 'not' must come before it. (For 'stay' say *live*.) Similarly in the next sentence 'I do not sail.'

<sup>2</sup> ORDER OF WORDS, RULE 3.—Put the Accusative before the Verb on which it depends.

*Complete the following sentences by inserting a Verb.*

Oram maritimam —.

Ora maritima nos —.

Scaphas albas —.

Scaphae interdum caeruleae —.

Ora maritima — bella.

---

*Complete the following sentences by inserting a Preposition in the first place and a Verb in the second.*

— arenā — scaphae.

— oram maritimam nautas —

Agricolae — silvam —.

— nautis interdum —.

— agricolis interdum —.

---

*After § 3. Conversation. (Quid = what.)*

Q. Quid ex fenestrā spectas?

A. Ex fenestrā undas et oram maritimam specto.

Q. Oram maritimam amas?

A. Oram maritimam amo. Undae me delectant.

Q. Silvam non amas?

A. Silvam amo. Silva me delectat.

Q. In silvā interdum ambulas?

A. In silvā saepe ambulo.

Q. Ubi est silva?

A. Silva non procul a villā est.

Q. Quid est in silvā?

A. In silvā est copia plantarum et herbarum

Q. Bacas non amas?

A. Quantopere me bacae delectant!



§ 4. (*Vocative Singular and Plural.*)

Inter ferias te, ora maritima, et vos, undae caeruleae, saepe specto.

Vos, undae caeruleae, Britannia amat.

Te, regina mea, amo; te, patria mea, amo.

Vos, incolae Africae Meridianae, regina insularum Britannicarum amat.

I love thee, [o] Queen Victoria.

Victoria is queen not only of the British islands, but also of Canada, of Australia, of South Africa.

I love thee, [o] South Africa; for (§ 2) South Africa is my native-land.

I love you, [o] inhabitants of Britain; for South Africa is a British colony.

Great is the glory of the British colonies.

§ 5. (*Dative Singular.*)

Silva Lydiae laetitiam dat.

Columbae Lydiae laetitiam dant.

Lingua Francogallica Lydiae laetitiam non dat.

Tu, Lydia, inter ferias magistræ tuæ operam non das.

Ego inter ferias linguae Latinae operam non do.

India gives delight to the Queen<sup>1</sup> of the British isles.

But India is not a British colony.

The British colonies also give delight to the British Queen.

Canada gives delight to Britain.

For Canada is a great British colony.

<sup>1</sup> ORDER OF WORDS, RULE 4.—Put the Dative before the Accusative. (Note that the gift stands in the Accusative, and the person to whom the gift is made in the Dative.)

§ 5 *continued.* (*Dative Plural.*)

Undae caeruleae nautis laetitiam dant.

Procellae nautis laetitiam non dant.

Plantae et herbae agricolis laetitiam dant.

Agricolae scaphis operam non dant.

Inter ferias linguis antiquis operam non saepe do.

The Queen of Britain gives attention to the British colonies.

The British colonies give delight to the inhabitants of the British isles.

Sailors give attention to boats and anchors and chains.

My aunt gives attention to the cottages of the farmers and sailors.

Lydia gives attention to doves.

*After § 5. (Practice in translation of English Prepositions.)*

*Make Latin sentences containing translations of the following phrases, and then say which of these English Prepositions are not translated by Prepositions in Latin.*

in a country-house.

out-of a country-house.

not far from a country-house.

to a country-house

(*with a Verb of 'going.'*)

of a country-house.

with my aunt.

to my aunt

(*with a Verb of 'giving.'*)

under a boat.

before supper.

after supper.

in country-houses.

out-of country-houses.

not far from country-houses

to country-houses

(*with a Verb of 'going.'*)

of country-houses.

with my aunts.

to my aunts

(*with a Verb of 'giving.'*)

under boats.

during the holidays.

*After § 5. Translate and learn the following tables containing forms of Pronouns hitherto found.*

|             |                  | SINGULAR. | PLURAL. |
|-------------|------------------|-----------|---------|
| 1ST PERSON. | NOMINATIVE CASE. | ego       | nos     |
|             | ACCUSATIVE CASE. | me        | nos     |
| 2ND PERSON. | NOMINATIVE CASE. | tu        | vos     |
|             | ACCUSATIVE CASE. | te        | vos     |

NOMINATIVE CASE WITH VERES.

|             | SINGULAR.                   | PLURAL.                        |
|-------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1ST PERSON. | ego in villā habito.        | nos in villā habitamus.        |
| 2ND PERSON. | tu in villā habitas.        | vos in villā habitatis.        |
| 3RD PERSON. | amita mea in villā habitat. | amitae meae in villā habitant. |

ACCUSATIVE CASE WITH VERBS.

|             | SINGULAR.              | PLURAL.               |
|-------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1ST PERSON. | amita mea me amat.     | amita mea nos amat.   |
| 2ND PERSON. | amita mea te amat.     | amita mea vos amat.   |
| 3RD PERSON. | amita mea villam amat. | amita mea casas amat. |

*After § 5. Conversation.*

*(Recapitulation of 1st Declension and Present Tense of 'sum' and 1st Conjugation.)* Quis = *who*.

*Q.* Quis in villā nunc habitat?

*A.* Lydia, consobrina mea, in villā nunc habitat.

*Q.* Tu quoque apud amitam tuam nunc habitas?

*A.* Ego quoque apud amitam meam nunc habito.

*Q.* Quid curat Lydia?

*A.* Lydia columbas curat.

*Q.* Linguae Francogallicae operam dat?

*A.* Linguae Francogallicae operam non dat: nam feriae nunc sunt.

*Q.* Tu linguae Latinae inter ferias operam das?

*A.* Linguae Latinae inter ferias operam non do.

Q. Ubi es inter ferias?

A. Apud amitam meam inter ferias sum.

Q. Quid te inter ferias delectat?

A. Arena, ora maritima, scaphae me inter ferias delectant.

Q. In scaphis interdum navigas?

A. In scaphis saepe navigo.

Q. Procellas non formidas?

A. Cum nautā navigo.

Q. Tu et Lydia in silvā interdum ambulatis?

A. In silvā interdum ambulamus.

*After § 5. (Present Indicative of 'sum.')*<sup>1</sup>

I am an inhabitant of Britain.

Thou, [o] Canada, art a British colony.

Canada is an ancient (*antiqua*) colony of Britain.

We are inhabitants of the British isles.

You, [o] British colonies, are far from the British isles.

There are British colonies in Australia.

*After § 5. (Present Indicative of the 1st Conjugation.)*

I now live in my aunt's country-house not far from the sea shore.

You, Lydia, now live with my aunt.

Your schoolmistress lives far from the sea-shore.

During the holidays we often sail in boats: and we do not give attention to the languages of Rome and Greece.

You, [o] blue waves, now delight us.

During the holidays the languages of Rome and Greece do not delight us.

<sup>1</sup> AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH THE SUBJECT.—The Verb must be of the same Person and Number as its Subject (that is, the person or thing that 'does' or 'is').

§ 6. (*2nd Declension in -us, Singular Number.*)

Hortus bellus est.

Tu, horte, non magnus es.

Hortum bellum inter ferias saepe visito.

Violae horti belli caeruleae sunt.

Patruus meus horto bello aquam dat.

In horto bello sunt rosae.

My<sup>1</sup> uncle lives in a country-house near the sea-shore. I love my uncle. I often visit my uncle's garden. I sometimes water the roses and violets of the garden. I often walk in the garden with Lydia. Sometimes I walk round the wall of the garden with my uncle. There is a stream not far from the garden. In the stream is an abundance of water. The garden gives delight to my uncle.

§ 7. (*Second Declension in -us, Plural Number.*)

Mergi in orā maritimā nidificant.

Vos, mergi, in orā maritimā nidificatis.

Mergos in orā maritimā non capto.

Cibus mergorum in oceano est.

Mergis inter ferias operam do.

Corvi cum mergis non nidificant, non volitant.

There is a great number of elms in my uncle's garden. Many<sup>2</sup> crows live in the elms. Sea-gulls do not make-nests in

<sup>1</sup> Note that the adjectives in these early exercises (§§ 1-11) have always the same endings as their Nouns.

<sup>2</sup> The Latin Adjectives meaning 'many', 'some', 'all', 'few', generally stand *before* their Nouns (not after them, like most Adjectives; see Rule 1 of Order, p. 101).

elms. I like to watch (say *gladly watch*) the sea-gulls, when I am on the sea-shore. During the holidays I sometimes give food to the horses of my uncle's farm. Lydia gives food to the cocks and hens. My uncle gives attention to his farm and his horses and cows and pigs. The crows give delight to my uncle.

---

*After § 7. Conversation.*

*Q.* Agellus patruī tui tibi et Lydiae laetitiam dat?

*A.* Agellus patruī mei nos delectat.

*Q.* Quid in agello est?

*A.* In agello sunt equi et vaccae et porci et galli gallinaeque.

*Q.* Quis equos et vaccas et porcos curat?

*A.* Ego equis interdum cibum do; sed rustici vaccas et porcos curant.

*Q.* Quis gallis gallinisque cibum dat?

*A.* Lydia gallis gallinisque cibum saepe dat.

*Q.* Ubi habitant rustici?

*A.* Rustici in vico habitant, non procul ab agello

---

§ 8. (*2nd Declension continued.*)

The blue waves foam and murmur round my uncle's garden. I like to watch (say *gladly watch*) the blue waves of the ocean. I like to walk to the high cliffs of the sea-shore. The lighthouses of the French coast (say *shore*) are not far distant. The moon and stars often light-up the ocean. It delights me to see the white cliffs and the waves. Boats carry sailors on the ocean; sailors carry boats on the sand.

*After §8. Conversation.*

*Q.* Quid tu et Lydia in horto patruī tui spectatis?

*A.* Non solum rosas et violas sed etiam corvos spectamus.

*Q.* Quid ex horto spectatis?

*A.* Mergos interdum ex horto spectamus.

*Q.* Ubi sunt nidi mergorum?

*A.* Nidi mergorum in scopulis orae maritimae sunt; sed non nulli ex mergis in insulis prope oram maritimam nidificant.

*Q.* Ubi praedam suam captant?

*A.* Praedam suam in oceano captant.

*Q.* Mergi interdum super agellum volitant?

*A.* Super agellum volitant; nam ibi quoque cibum suum captant.

*Q.* Quid ex scopulis orae maritimae spectatis?

*A.* Ex scopulis pharos orae Francogallicae spectamus.

§9. (*2nd Declension in -um.*)

Oppidum antiquum in Cantio est.

Te, oppidum antiquum, amo.

Oppidum antiquum inter ferias interdum visito.

Fundamenta oppidi antiqui magna sed non alta sunt.

Oppido antiquo inter ferias operam do.

In oppido antiquo nummi Romani sunt.

Oppida antiqua me delectant.

Vos, oppida antiqua, amo.

Oppida antiqua libenter visito.

Aedificia oppidorum antiquorum interdum Romana sunt.

Oppidis antiquis libenter operam do.

In oppidis antiquis nummi Britannici interdum sunt.

Where is Kent? Kent is in South Britain. The coast (say *shore*) of Kent is not far from the French coast. My uncle's farm is in Kent. Dover and Richborough are not far from my uncle's

farm. There are traces of a Roman amphitheatre near Richborough. London also is an ancient town. London is not far distant from Kent. There are many ancient towns on British soil. In Britain we often see the foundations of Roman buildings.

---

*After § 9. Conversation.*

Q. Ubi habitant patruus tuus et amita tua?

A. In Cantio habitant, inter Dubras et Rutupias.

Q. Quid in Cantio spectas?

A. (*Here may be introduced all the Nouns hitherto learned, Singular or Plural Number.*)

---

§ 10. (*2nd Declension in -um continued.*)

I often see the ancient castle, when I visit Dover. The castle is on the cliffs, near the sea-shore. The walls of the castle are not ancient; but there are relics of ancient buildings in the castle. At the present-day there is a church near the relics of the ancient buildings. The church also is ancient; for it was a consecrated building in the second century after the birth of Christ (*say after Christ born.*)

---

§ 11. (*2nd Declension in -um continued.*)

From the windows of the castle we see many vessels. There are many vessels in the English Channel. Many vessels sail round Britain. I see the flags of British and French vessels. But where are the German and Belgian vessels? I do not now see German and Belgian vessels in the English Channel. But many German and Belgian vessels sail to Britain.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Imitate *in Africam Meridianam*. So, too, in future exercises when going or sailing to a Country is spoken of.



*After § 11. Conversation.*

*Q.* Dubras et Rutupias interdum visitas?

*A.* Dubras saepe visito.

*Q.* Quid ibi spectas?

*A.* Castellum antiquum ibi specto.

*Q.* Quid in castello spectas?

*A.* In castello speculam antiquam specto.

*Q.* Quid ex castello spectas?

*A.* Ex castello fretum Gallicum et clivos gramineos specto.

*Q.* Quid in freto Gallico spectas?

*A.* In freto Gallico navigia specto.

*Q.* Navigia libenter spectas?

*A.* Nonnulla ex navigiis in patriam meam navigant.

*§ 12. (2nd Declension in -er.)*

Puer Marcus condiscipulus meus est.

Tu, puer Marce, mihi praecipuus amicus es.

Puerum Marcum saepe visito.

Pueri Marci patria est Caledonia.

Puero Marco feriae magnam laetitiam dant.

Cum puero Marco saepe nato.

Duo pueri prope Dubras habitant.

Vos, pueri, condiscipuli mei estis.

Pueros, condiscipulos meos, pilae delectant.

Patria puerorum procul a Cantio est.

Pueris ludi in arenā laetitiam dant.

Cum pueris interdum in scaphā navigo.

Two boys are my friends. They live in Kent, but Scotland is the native-land of the boys. The boys are my schoolfellows. I often visit the boys during the holidays. Sometimes I swim with the boys in the blue waves. How much it delights us boys to see the great waves!

§ 13. (*2nd Declension in -er continued.*)

During the holidays a boy does not pay attention to lessons. The ancient languages of Greece and Rome do not delight a boy during the holidays. There are many amusements of a boy when he is free<sup>1</sup> from lessons. Games of ball give great delight to a boy, not only during the holidays but also when he is not<sup>2</sup> free from lessons.

Peter is a sailor. I like Peter. Peter's boat is a source (§9)<sup>3</sup> not only of amusement but also of gain to Peter.

---

*After § 13. Conversation. (Quot = how many.)*

*Q.* Quot tibi amici sunt?

*A.* Duo mihi sunt amici.

*Q.* Ubi habitant amici tui?

*A.* Prope Dubras nunc habitant amici mei.

*Q.* Pueros interdum visitas?

*A.* Pueros saepe visito.

*Q.* Quid vos pueros inter ferias delectat?

*A.* Ludi pilarum, castella in arenā aedificare, in undis natare, in scaphis navigare nos delectant.

*Q.* Undas spumiferas non formidatis?

*A.* Undas non formidamus.

*Q.* Vos pueri interdum remigatis?

*A.* Interdum remigamus, cum undae non nimis asperae sunt.

*Q.* Quis remigat cum undae asperae sunt?

*A.* Cum undae nimis asperae sunt, Petrus remigat vel velis ministrat.

---

<sup>1</sup>The Adjective used with the Verb 'to be' must be in the same Case and Number as the Subject of which it is said; thus here 'free' must be Nominative Singular, because 'he' is Nominative Singular.

<sup>2</sup>See Order of Words, Rule 2. Here 'not' negatives 'free' and must therefore stand immediately before it.

<sup>3</sup>Where a number is quoted like this in brackets, it means that the word required can be found in a certain section of the Preparations.

§ 14. (2nd Declension continued: 'vir'.)

There is a nobleman<sup>1</sup> mentioned in a play<sup>2</sup>. The nobleman's life is unhappy. The man has<sup>3</sup> two sons. The son Edgar<sup>4</sup> is faithful. But the son Edmund<sup>4</sup> does not love the nobleman. The nobleman prepares to hurl himself down-from a cliff. The cliff is near Dover. But the faithful son walks to the cliff with the nobleman, and saves the life of the unhappy man.

After § 14.

1. Write two sentences about the things seen in Kent during the holidays. In the first sentence say 'During the holidays I see . . . .'; in the second sentence say 'How much it delights me to see . . . .' (and here put in the things that you like best to see).

2. Repeat the table of Pronouns given after § 5, and add the Dative Cases, Singular and Plural (mihi, tibi, nobis, vobis). Make up sentences containing these Datives.

§ 15. (2nd Declension in -er continued.)

Magister noster vir doctus est.

Tu, magister, mihi carus es.

Magistrum nostrum amo.

Libri magistri nostri pulchri sunt.

Libri magistro nostro magnam laetitiam dant.

Cum magistro nostro saepe ambulamus.

Magistri nostri viri docti sunt.

Vos, magistri, pueris pigris non cari estis.

Magistros multi pueri formidant.

<sup>1</sup> Note that the Adjective in this case has not the same ending as the Noun; so, too, often in the following exercises.

<sup>2</sup> Say *in a play mentioned*; see Order of Words, Rule 2.

<sup>3</sup> Say *to the man there-are*; see Preparations, § 9, end (patruo meo est).

<sup>4</sup> These English names may be latinized as *Edgarus*, *Edmundus*.

Libri magistrorum nostrorum docti sunt.

Magistris nostris copia librorum est.

Cum magistris nostris ludis saepe operam damus.

I often see our schoolmaster during the holidays. Our schoolmaster has<sup>1</sup> many books about (§ 10) Britain. We boys like to see<sup>2</sup> the books of our schoolmaster. The schoolmaster's books are filled<sup>3</sup> with Roman and Greek coins. I am a schoolfellow of Mark and Alexander in a famous and ancient school. Not only the boys but also the masters of our school pay attention to games.

§ 16. (*Agreement of Adjectives.*)

|                |                  |                 |
|----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| nummus Romanus | villa Romana     | oppidum Romanum |
| vir doctus     | fagus Britannica |                 |
| liber Latinus  |                  |                 |
| nauta Romanus  |                  |                 |

RULE.—Make the Adjective agree with its Noun in Gender<sup>1</sup> as well as in Number and Case.

This rule applies not only to examples like those above, in which the Adjective is called an *Attribute* of the Noun, but also to examples like the following, in which the Adjective is used with the Verb 'to be' and is called a *Predicate Adjective*:

|                     |                       |             |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-------------|
| nummus est Romanus. | villa est Romana.     | oppidum est |
| vir est doctus.     | fagus est Britannica. | Romanum.    |

<sup>1</sup> Say *to our schoolmaster there are*; see *Preparations* § 9, end. Similarly in all future sentences where the verb 'to have' occurs in this book.

<sup>2</sup> Here and in all future sentences where 'like to —' occurs say 'gladly —'.

<sup>3</sup> Use *creber*, and remember the rule for the Case and Number of Adjectives used with the verb 'to be' given on § 13 ('he is free').

<sup>4</sup> For Rules of Gender see *Preparations* § 15 (p. 75).—Note that the ending of the Adjective is not always the same as that of the Noun (as it was in the exercises on §§ 1-11).

A learned teacher is sometimes not dear to boys. Our teacher is learned. Boys are not learned. My aunt is not learned. But we boys love our teacher. And my aunt likes to listen when a learned man tells about the ancient Britons. There-were<sup>1</sup> great forests in ancient Britain. But there-were not many beeches in the British forests. So Gaius Julius affirms. There-were many wolves and bears in the great forests of ancient Britain.

---

§ 17. (*Agreement of Adjectives continued.*)

Were the Roman sailors lazy? Gaius Julius does not blame (§ 14) the Roman sailors. He praises<sup>2</sup> the courage of his sailors. Roman farmers were active, as a Roman poet affirms. There were many Roman sailors (say *many sailors Roman*) on the vessels of Gaius<sup>3</sup> Julius. Roman vessels were-able to sail to Britain and round the British coast. The rains of Britain were hideous then,<sup>4</sup> as they are now.<sup>4</sup> The small pearls of the British ocean were mostly (§ 13) dark or blue.

---

§ 18. (*Past Imperfect Indicative of 'sum' and the 1st Conjugation.*)

Proximo anno in Cantio eram.

Proximo anno in Cantio eras.

Proximo anno in Cantio erat.

Proximo anno in Cantio eramus.

Proximo anno in Cantio eratis.

Proximo anno in Cantio erant.

---

<sup>1</sup> The only forms of the Past Imperfect needed for this and the following exercise are those which have actually occurred in the text of the story.

<sup>2</sup> Use the verb laudo, 'I praise' (*Preparations* § 13).

<sup>3</sup> Gāius forms Gen. Gāi, Dat. Gāiō.

<sup>4</sup> Remember that 'then' and 'now' are Adverbs.

Multa aedificia antiqua spectabam.

Multa aedificia antiqua spectabas.

Multa aedificia antiqua spectabat.

Multa aedificia antiqua spectabamus.

Multa aedificia antiqua spectabatis.

Multa aedificia antiqua spectabant.

The large vessels of British sailors are mostly (§ 13) black ; but the little boats are sometimes white, sometimes blue, sometimes yellow. Last year, while (§ 16) I was in Kent, I used-to-see many British sailors. They were all sun-burnt. Some<sup>1</sup> of the sailors used-to-tattoo (say *colour*) their limbs. The clothes of British and French sailors are blue. British sailors mostly have sturdy limbs and a great stature. Our sailors sail round the coasts of all lands, as the Roman sailors used-to-sail round the coasts of the Mediterranean.<sup>2</sup> A British sailor does not fear storms.

§ 19. (*Adjectives and Past Imperfect Indicative continued.*)

Were all the inhabitants of ancient Britain Celts? I think not.<sup>3</sup> Some of the ancient inhabitants of our island were not barbarous. The inhabitants of Kent were mostly farmers, as they are now.<sup>4</sup> Many of the inhabitants of Kent were Belgians (§ 15). Were not the Belgians a German tribe (§ 18)? Does not Gaius Julius so affirm in his book about the Gallic war? The German tribes were moderately civilized, but the ancient Celts of Britain were not civilized.

<sup>1</sup>The word for 'some' must stand in the Nominative Case and be Masculine Plural, because 'some of the sailors' means 'some *sailors* of the sailors'; see the example in § 11 of the story.

<sup>2</sup>Say 'the Mediterranean ocean.' 'Mediterranean' is an Adjective, meaning 'Mid-land,' and is in Latin *Mediterraneus* (*a,um*).

<sup>3</sup>A very common way of saying 'I think not,' 'I hope not,' and so forth in Latin is 'I do not think,' 'I do not hope,' etc.

<sup>4</sup>Remember that 'now' is an Adverb.

§ 20. (*Some uses of the Ablative without a Preposition: see summary of these uses at the end of Preparations § 20.*)<sup>1</sup>

(A.) In the second century before the birth of Christ<sup>2</sup> Britain was free. The boys and girls (§ 15) of the uncivilized Britons were free from lessons. The savage (§ 18) Britons together with their sons used-to-kill stags and wild-boars in the woods with spears and arrows. They used-to-catch (§ 7) wild-beasts with hunting dogs (§ 19) for the sake of food.

(B.) The civilized Britons used-to-adorn<sup>3</sup> their limbs with golden chains and with precious-stones (§ 19). By means of the vessels of the Veneti they used-to-export corn to Gaul. The Druids were the teachers of the children of the civilized Britons. The Romans used not to fight with chariots. They used-to-fight with barbarous tribes for the sake of victory and gain (§ 9). They used often to kill their captives; but sometimes they used to sell the captives at a great price (§ 9).

<sup>1</sup>NOTE ON THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION. The following English Prepositions are to be translated by the Ablative without a Preposition in certain cases.

'From,' when it comes after 'free' (*liber*, § 12) and 'I am free' (*vaco*, § 6).

'In' or 'At,' when it comes before a Noun denoting time, as 'in the second century,' *secundo saeculo* (§ 10), 'at what o'clock?' *quotā horā?* (§ 21). Also before a Noun denoting price or value, as 'at a great price,' *magno pretio* (§ 9).

'With,' when it means 'by means of,' or forms a phrase answering the question 'how?': as 'they used to fight with spears and arrows,' *hastis et sagittis pugnabant* (§ 18), 'they used to fight with great courage,' *magnā audaciā pugnabant*; 'hideous with rains,' *pluviis foedum* (§ 17); 'filled with victims,' *victimis plena* (§ 20); 'crowded with children,' *liberis creber* (§ 15).

'By means of' is generally to be translated by the Ablative alone.

[A fuller account of how to translate English Prepositions is given at the end of this book.]

<sup>2</sup>Here and in future exercises where the phrase 'before the birth of Christ' occurs, say *before Christ born*.

<sup>3</sup>Use the verb *orno*, I adorn, I ornament.

§ 21. (*Some forms of the Future Indicative.*)<sup>1</sup>

How I shall like<sup>2</sup> to walk to the place where the battle was : Where will the place be? The place will be on the coast of Kent, between Dover and Richborough. The road will be long, but it will be very-pleasing to us to see the place. You, Mark and Alexander, will walk with me and with my uncle to the place.

---

§ 22. (*Future Indicative and Imperative of 'sum' and 1st Conjugation.*)

Locum cras spectabo, si caelum serenum erit.

Tu, Marce, locum spectabis, si caelum serenum erit.

Alexander locum spectabit, si caelum serenum erit.

Universi locum spectabimus, si caelum serenum erit.

Vos, amita mea et Lydia, locum non spectabitis.

Amita mea et Lydia locum non spectabunt.

Specta, Marce !

Spectate, pueri !

---

If the sky is<sup>3</sup> clear, we shall-be-able to see the place where the Roman vessels were. My uncle will show us<sup>4</sup> the place. At what o'clock shall we arrive? You, Mark and Alexander, will dine with us when it is<sup>3</sup> evening. We shall carry our lunch with us. The cakes and apples will give us<sup>4</sup> great delight. "Show me<sup>4</sup> the tombs," says Alexander. Alexander is a little boy. "Not too

---

<sup>1</sup>The only forms needed for this exercise are those which have actually occurred in § 21 of the story.

<sup>2</sup>See note 2 on p. 118.

<sup>3</sup>Say *shall be*. The Future Tense often means 'shall' as well as 'will' in the 2nd and 3rd Persons, especially in subordinate clauses. Sometimes it means 'will' in the 1st Person.

<sup>4</sup>What Preposition might be used before the Pronoun in English? Think of the meaning. This Preposition after a verb of 'showing' is translated in the same way as after a verb of 'giving.'



fast! (say *hurry slowly*)," says my uncle. "Give attention, boys," says my aunt, "we shall dine at the eleventh hour. I shall praise (§ 13) you, if you arrive<sup>1</sup> before the eleventh hour. You will not arrive after the eleventh hour, as I hope." "I hope not,"<sup>2</sup> says my uncle.

---

§ 23. (*Future Indicative and Imperative continued.*)

We shall start (say *give ourselves to the road*) at the fifth hour. We shall not walk quickly. For Alexander will be tired if we walk<sup>3</sup> too (§ 12) quickly. What o'clock will it be when we arrive?<sup>3</sup> Will you be tired, Alexander, if we arrive<sup>3</sup> at the tenth hour? "I shall not be tired" says Alexander. "You will not walk too quickly, as I hope," says my aunt, "for Alexander is a little boy." "Not too fast! (say *hurry slowly*)" says Lydia; "Alexander will be hungry before the tenth hour. Carry an apple with you, Alexander!" "I shall not be hungry," says Alexander. "Give me the cakes," says my uncle. "Good-bye" says my aunt; "arrive in good-time (say *opportunately*)."

---

§ 24. (*Perfect Indicative of 'sum' and 1st Conjugation.*)

*Practice in all persons of the Singular and Plural the sentence:*

Locum spectavi quo Gaius Iulius navigia sua applicavit.

The sky was clear when we walked to the place where Gaius Julius fought with the Britons. In the year 55 B.C.<sup>4</sup> he built vessels in Gaul and sailed from the Gallic coast to the coast of Kent. He brought his vessels to land between Dover and Rich-

---

<sup>1</sup> Say *shall arrive*.

<sup>2</sup> See note 3 on p. 120.

<sup>3</sup> Use the Future Tense, as in Ex. § 22, p. 122.

<sup>4</sup> Say *in the fifty-fifth year before Christ born*; and similarly in all future sentences when the phrase 'B.C.' or 'A.D.' (Anno Domini) occurs, say *before Christ born* or *after Christ born*.

borough, as learned men have generally (*mostly*, § 13) affirmed. The Britons were prepared (§ 21), and they hastened to the place. My uncle has often seen the place, but we boys have never been there.

---

§ 25. (*Pluperfect Indicative of 'sum' and 1st Conjugation*).

*Practice in all persons of the Singular and Plural the sentence :*

Ad locum adventaveram quo Gaius Iulius navigia sua applicavit.

---

When Gaius Julius anchored<sup>1</sup> his vessels near the British coast, the Britons had already gathered themselves together on the cliffs. "We Britons will never be slaves (§ 19)" they say (§ 21). They had hastened along the sea-shore and had prepared themselves for battle (§ 24). Roman forces had never before sailed to our island. But Gallic vessels had often sailed to Britain for the sake of commerce. Gaius Julius had never before been in Britain. But he had waged-war (§ 24) against the inhabitants of the neighbouring coast. The Gauls (§ 19) had told Gaius Julius<sup>2</sup> many-things about Britain.

---

§ 26. (*Future Present Indicative of 'sum' and 1st Conjugation*.)

*Practice in all persons of the Singular and Plural the sentence :*

Cum alterum pomum gustavero, in viam me dabo.

---

"When<sup>3</sup> shall we have arrived home<sup>4</sup>?" says Alexander. "My aunt will not praise (§ 13) us" say I (§ 21) "if we arrive<sup>5</sup> late (§ 23)." "We shall have arrived before the eleventh hour," says

---

<sup>1</sup> Where the phrase 'to anchor' occurs, say 'to fasten to anchors,' as in the story.

<sup>2</sup> What Preposition might be put in before 'Gaius Julius' in English? Compare Ex. 22, note 4 (p. 122).

<sup>3</sup> What is the word for 'when' in a question?

<sup>4</sup> Use the word that properly means 'homewards': for the Romans always spoke of arriving 'to a place' (not 'at a place.')

<sup>5</sup> Use the Future Perfect Tense (*shall have* —).

my uncle, "unless (§ 25) there-is<sup>1</sup> rain (§ 17). If the sky is<sup>1</sup> clear, we shall not arrive late, as I hope." "Unless you, Alexander, walk<sup>1</sup> quickly," says Mark, "there will be delay." "When shall we visit Richborough?" say I. "If you visit<sup>1</sup> me next year (*proximo anno*)," says my uncle "I will walk with you to Richborough,<sup>2</sup> and I will show you the ruins of the castle belonging-to-Richborough (§ 21)."

---

*After § 26. (On Adjectives in -atus, a, um).*

*A. Translate and compare the following examples of Adjectives in -atus, -a, -um, which have occurred in the story.*

Aedificium consecratum (§ 10).

Nonnulla navigia Castella nominata sunt (§ 11).

Locus in fabula commemoratus est (§ 14).

Urnae pulchre ornatae (§ 20).

Quota hora parati eritis? (§ 21).

Non fatigatus sum (§ 23).

Copiae armatae (§ 24).

Quando satiatus eris? (§ 26).

*All these Adjectives are formed from Verbs, like the English Adjectives in -ed or -n formed from Verbs. Adjectives formed from Verbs are generally called 'Participles,' and they may be used, like other Adjectives, either to qualify Nouns or with the Verb 'to be' (see examples above). When they are used with the Verb 'to be' they form certain tenses of the 'Passive Voice,' as in English.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Use the Future Perfect Tense (*shall have* —).

<sup>2</sup> Imitate the way of saying 'to Dover' given in § 24 of the story, and see also the rule given in Preparations § 22. The case used to express 'to' and 'from' with the name of a Town is the same as if the Prepositions *ad* and *ab* were used.

*B. Translate into Latin.*

I am not satisfied.

Are you fatigued, Alexander?

The urn is beautifully adorned.

I have seen an urn beautifully adorned.

The Britons were armed with spears and arrows.

The Britons were prepared for (cf. § 24) battle.

We were prepared for lunch.

The building was already consecrated in the second century.

The Roman vessels were already fastened to anchors (§ 24)

The Britons were gathered-together on the sea-shore (§ 25)

*After § 26. (On Adjectives in -andus, a, um, and Nouns in -andum).<sup>1</sup>*

*Translate in the way indicated in the Preparations (§§ 25, 24, 23) the following sentences containing Adjectives in -andus, a, um :—*

Audacia aquiliferi erat laudanda (*laud-able* or *praise-worthy*, § 25).

Audacia laudanda aquiliferi Romanos servavit.

Magister noster est amandus (*ami-able* or *lov-able* or *worthy-to-be-loved*).

Amita mea est amanda.

Amita mea amanda in Cantio habitat.

Scopuli Cantii sunt spectandi (*worthy-to-be-seen* or simply *to-be-seen*).

Scopulos spectandos Cantii saepe visitavi.

Navigia ad scopulos non sunt applicanda (*to-be-brought-to-land*).

<sup>1</sup> The uses of the Adjectives in -andus, a, um, and Nouns in -andum will be more fully explained hereafter (at the end of the Exercises).

Locus non idoneus est ad navigia applicanda (*for vessels to-be-brought-to-land*, § 24).<sup>1</sup>

Locus idoneus erat ad copias explicandas (*for forces to-be-deployed*, § 25).

*Translate the following sentences containing Nouns in -andum:—*

Paratus sum ad ambulandum (*for walking*, § 23).

Parati sumus ad remigandum (*cf. remigo, I row*).

Cupidi (*desirous*) sumus remigandi (Gen. Case of 'remigandum.')

Cupidi eramus visitandi locum ubi proelium erat.

Cupidus sum ambulandi ad locum.

Ad locum ambulandi cupidus sum.

§ 27. (*3rd Declension.—Masculines and Feminines that form the Nominative Singular without adding -s*). •

(A). C. Julius Caesar was a famous (*clarus*, § 15) general of the Romans in the first century B.C. Great was the glory (§4) of C. Julius Caesar. The Gauls feared (§2; say *used-to-fear*) Caesar. For within (§22) three years he had defeated (§24) the Helvetii<sup>2</sup> in South Gaul and the Veneti on the Gallic coast and the tribes of Belgic Gaul. There were many Caesars before and after C. Julius Caesar. The Romans *used-to-name*<sup>3</sup> the Caesars 'Generals.' The forces of the Caesars were great. My uncle has told me many-things about the Caesars.

<sup>1</sup> Compare in English such sentences as 'It is time for the dinner to be got ready,' 'I am eager for the dinner to be got ready,' 'Ring the bell for the dinner to be cleared away,' etc.

<sup>2</sup> *Helvetii*, the plural of *Helvetius*, is a noun of the 2nd Declension. The Helvetii lived in *Helvetia* (Switzerland).

<sup>3</sup> Use *nomino* 'I name,' from which comes the Adjective *nominatus*, *us, um* 'named' (§11).

(B). Why did Caesar wage-war against Britain? The cause (§9) of the expedition against Britain is known (§16). During the war with the Veneti some of the tribes<sup>1</sup> of Britain had supplied auxiliaries to<sup>2</sup> the Veneti. For the Veneti had been friends of the tribes of South Britain during many years. There had also been war between the tribes of South Britain. And the Trinobantes were friends of the Romans. Accordingly (§19) Caesar prepared to supply aid to the Trinobantes against the Cassi.

---

§ 28. (*Same Nouns continued.*)

Caesar's first expedition was not great; but in the second expedition of the next year a great multitude of vessels and five legions sailed with Caesar to Britain. How-many<sup>3</sup> men were-there in a Roman legion? How-many men were-there in five Roman legions? The number was different (§19) in different centuries. Among<sup>4</sup> Caesar's forces were also many Gallic auxiliaries. For the Belgae and other Gallic tribes had supplied forces to Caesar. Many Caesars were warlike. In the first century A.D. one (§22) of the Caesars named Claudius was the second conqueror (*victor*) of Britain. I do not love the Caesars; but C. Julius Caesar was a great man and a great general.

---

§ 29. (*3rd Declension.—Masculines and Feminines that form the Nominative Singular by adding -s.*)

A. There had been peace between the Romans and the Britons after the first expedition of Caesar. It was not necessary for Caesar (§24) to wage-war a-second-time against the free tribes of

---

<sup>1</sup> Translate 'tribe' by *natio* (instead of *populus*) in this and all following exercises.

<sup>2</sup> The verb 'to supply' is a verb of 'giving.' How, then, is *to the Veneti* to be translated?

<sup>3</sup> 'How-many' is *quot* (indeclinable; see Latin Drill §13).

<sup>4</sup> Say *in the number of*.

Britain. But he was desirous of glory and booty. Accordingly in the year 54 B.C. he transported five legions of Roman soldiers and a great multitude of Gallic horse-soldiers to our island. The soldiers of the Roman legions were foot-soldiers.<sup>1</sup> Caesar did not fear the tempests<sup>2</sup> of the English channel; he did not fear the arrows and chariots of the British tribes. From (*ex*) the pluck of his soldiers and sailors he expected (§ 26) victory.

§ 30. (3rd Declension.—Neuters in *-men, -us* or *-ur*.)<sup>3</sup>

Among Caesar's legions was the tenth (§ 22) legion. The name of the tenth legion was 'Alauda.'<sup>4</sup> The name of the tenth legion was famous, and dear to the soldiers. What<sup>5</sup> was the name of the

<sup>1</sup> The word for 'foot-soldier' is *pedes* (stem *pedit-*), declined like *miles* and *eques*. [*ped-it-* means properly 'foot-goer,' as *equ-it-* means 'horse-goer.']

<sup>2</sup> Use *tempestas*, which also means 'weather' (*Preparations* § 29).

<sup>3</sup> These Neuters, like the Masculines and Feminines of §§ 27 and 28, form the Nominative Singular without adding an *s*. The *s* of words like *tempus* (with an *r* before the ending of the Gen. Sing.) is not an addition to the stem but part of it: between two vowels, however, the *s* changes to *r*.

The Rule of Gender in the 3rd Decl. is therefore:—

1. Nouns denoting PERSONS are Masculine if they denote MALE PERSONS, Feminine if they denote FEMALE PERSONS. (This rule is the same for all declensions).
2. Nouns not denoting persons and forming the Nominative Singular by adding an *s* are mostly Feminine.
3. Nouns not denoting persons and forming the Nominative Singular without adding an *s* are mostly—

Feminine if the Nom. Sing. ends in *IO, DO* or *GO*;

Neuter if the Nom. Sing. ends in *MEN, US, UR*, or *E*;

Masculine in other cases (for instance when the Nom. Sing. ends in *OR*).

<sup>4</sup> A Noun of the 1st Declension, meaning 'the Lark.'

<sup>5</sup> Use *quid* (see Drill Ex. § 3, p. 106). In asking 'what is the name?' the Romans regularly used the Pronoun *quid* (not the adjectival form of it).

river where there was a great contest of the Britons against the Romans? There are many rivers in South Britain. Caesar does not mention<sup>1</sup> the name of the river. A Roman had three<sup>2</sup> names. The first names of Caesar were Gaius and Julius. The chief (§ 12) name of a Roman was the second name.

---

§ 31. (*Same Nouns continued.*)

(A.) There were many contests of the Britons with the Romans. In some of the contests the Britons carried-off the victory. But they were not able to stand (§ 11) against the weight and strength of the Roman legions. The bodies of the Britons were big and strong, and the Romans were men of small bodies.<sup>3</sup> But Caesar's legions were skilled (§ 15) in<sup>4</sup> war. Accordingly they mostly (§ 13) carried off the victory without many wounds.

(B.) Before the time of C. Julius Caesar Roman vessels had never (§ 25) sailed to our island, unless (§ 25) for the sake of commerce (§ 19). After the time of C. Julius Caesar another (§ 24) Caesar, by name Claudius, got-together (§ 28) an expedition against Britain. In the times<sup>5</sup> of Nero<sup>6</sup> Agricola defeated (§ 24) the Britons and Caledonians. C. Julius Caesar was the first but not the chief (§ 12) conqueror of the Britons.

---

<sup>1</sup> Use *commemoro*, 'I mention,' from which comes the Adjective *commemoratus*, *a*, *um* 'mentioned' (§ 14).

<sup>2</sup> The Neuter of *tres* (§ 27) is *tria*.

<sup>3</sup> For 'men' use *homo*; and for 'of small bodies' say 'with small bodies,' as in the last line of § 30 of the story.

<sup>4</sup> What Case does the Adjective meaning 'skilled' take in Latin? See *Preparations* § 15 (p. 73).

<sup>5</sup> No Preposition in Latin; for 'in the times' denotes *time when*; cf. p. 69.

<sup>6</sup> *Nerō* (stem *Nerōn-*) was one of the early Caesars or Emperors of Rome, belonging to the Julian family.



§32. (*3rd Declension.—Feminines and Masculines in -is, like 'navis'.*)

(A.) Caesar's fleet was large. For there-were not only ships of-burden but also ships of-war in the fleet. How-many<sup>1</sup> ships sailed with Caesar on the second expedition? The whole (§16) number of the ships was eight-hundred. Six-hundred of (use *ex*) the ships were ships of-burden. The Romans sometimes used-to-name<sup>2</sup> ships of-burden 'vessels.' 'Vessel' is a noun (say *name*) of the second declension (use *declinatio*), but 'ship' is a noun of the third (§23) declension.

(B.) When the enemy<sup>3</sup> saw Caesar's great fleet, they feared (§2). But the size of Caesar's ships was small. In the ships of-burden were the soldiers and the horses and the arms. Why did Caesar sail with ships of-war against the British enemy?<sup>3</sup> The Britons had built no ships. But Caesar perhaps (§25) did-not-know (§31) this.<sup>4</sup> He had prepared his second expedition in<sup>5</sup> the winter of the year 55 B.C. He sailed in<sup>5</sup> the summer (§29) of the next (§28) year. In ancient times Rome ruled<sup>6</sup> the waves.

---

§33. (*Same Nouns continued.*)

In a Roman ship of-burden not more<sup>7</sup> than two-hundred (§32) men were-able to sail. A ship of-burden was not so large as a ship of-war. How-many men were-able to sail in Caesar's fleet?

---

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. §28, Note 3 (p. 128), and Latin Drill, §13.

<sup>2</sup> See Ex. §27 A, Note 3 (p. 127).

<sup>3</sup> Use the Plural (enemies).

<sup>4</sup> Use *hoc*; see *Preparations* §15 (p. 73).

<sup>5</sup> No Preposition in Latin; for 'in the winter' and 'in the summer' denote *time when*, like 'in the second century' (*Prep.* §10), 'last year' (§16), etc.

<sup>6</sup> Say *was mistress of*.

<sup>7</sup> The Singular Number of the word meaning 'more' (*Prep.* §33) is good Latin here; but the Verb 'were-able' must be Plural, as in the English.

On a Roman ship of-war there-were sometimes high turrets, as (§ 18) on ships of-the-present-day (§ 18). From the high turrets the soldiers used to drive-off (§ 25) the enemy with spears (§ 18). An ancient ship of-war had sails and oars. An ancient ship of-war was not armed with iron plates. An ancient ship of-war was not so large as a ship of-war of-the-present-day.

§ 34. (*3rd Declension.—Feminines and Masculines whose stems end in two consonants.*)

(A.) Cassivellaunus was king of a small part of South Britain. What<sup>1</sup> was the name of the race? In ancient times<sup>2</sup> there-were many races and many kings in Britain. Many<sup>3</sup> of the races were barbarous. But the races of the Southern (use *meridianus, a, um*) parts were not barbarous. Before the times of Caesar Cassivellaunus had fought against the-other (§ 19) races of South Britain. The name of the king of the Trinobantes was Imanuentius.

(B.) The boundaries of many British races are not known (§ 16) to us. The names of the British kings are mostly (§ 13) not mentioned (§ 14) in the book of Caesar. Britain was not a part of the Roman empire<sup>4</sup> after the victory of Caesar. After the time of Claudius, the fourth (§ 29) Caesar,<sup>5</sup> Britain was under the command<sup>4</sup> of the Caesars. The name of the family (use *gens*) of C. Julius Caesar was the Julian family. The Romans used-to-name the Caesars "Princes" and "Generals."

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. § 30, note 5 (p. 129).

<sup>2</sup> See Ex. § 31, note 5 (p. 130).

<sup>3</sup> What Gender? 'Many of the races' means 'many *races* of the races.' For 'of' use *ex*.

<sup>4</sup> Use *imperium*.

<sup>5</sup> In what case must 'the fourth Caesar' be? Think of the meaning (*after the time of the fourth Caesar*).

§ 35. (*Same Nouns continued.*)

(A.) Some<sup>1</sup> of the Southern or maritime races of Britain were Belgians (§ 15). But the Belgae were of German origin, as Caesar tells us in the 'Gallic War.' The chapter is the fourth of the second book. Therefore there were people<sup>2</sup> of German origin in Britain in the first and second century B.C. The inhabitants of modern Britain (say of *Britain of the present-day*) are mostly of German origin. But they migrated across the German ocean into Britain in the fourth and the fifth century after the birth of Christ.

(B.) Many modern cities are named from (use *ex*) the Belgian (§ 11) races of Kent. The names of the cities are Belgian. But the Belgians of Britain used not to build cities, if the testimony (§ 17) of Caesar is true. Winchester (§ 15) is the name of an ancient city of South Britain. The inhabitants of cities are not barbarous. Caesar tells us about British 'towns.' The British 'towns' were different from (§ 19) cities.

---

§ 36. (*3rd Declension.—Neuters in -e, like 'mare.'*)

The British sea separates (§ 34) Britain from Gaul. A part of the British sea is named the 'Gallic channel.' Some of the Gauls used-to-sail across the British sea to Britain for the sake of commerce. London is not many miles distant from the sea. The Britons did not fight against Caesar on the sea, because they had never (§ 25) built ships. British sailors now sail across many seas. On many seas and in many lands (§ 4) you see the British flag (§ 11).

---

<sup>1</sup> What Gender? 'Some of the races' means 'some *races* of the races.' For 'of' use *ex*.

<sup>2</sup> Say *men*, and use *homo* (*Prep.* § 30). *Homo* means 'human being' and includes women; *vir* does not include women. The Plural of *homo* is the only word that can be used for 'people' in the sense of 'persons'; for *populus* means 'a people' in the sense of 'a nation' or 'a tribe,' and the Plural *populi* means 'nations' or 'tribes.'

§ 37. (*Recapitulation of Nouns of 3rd Declension.*)

The British soldiers used-to-fight from (*out-of*) chariots. Caesar had not only foot-soldiers but also horse-soldiers (§ 29). But the mobility of the Roman soldiers was not great. Accordingly the enemy often used-to-throw-into-confusion the ranks of the Romans. In modern times<sup>1</sup> horse-soldiers sometimes carry (§ 6) the arms (§ 30) of foot-soldiers. Thus they are able to leap<sup>2</sup> down-from (§ 14) their horses and to fight on-foot. The Boers<sup>3</sup> of South Africa have horse-soldiers of-this-kind.

---

§ 38. (*Recapitulation of Nouns of 3rd Declension continued.*)

The boundaries (§ 34) of the Cassi were across (§ 35) the river Thames. The British leader (§ 29) used not to fight against the Romans in proper (§ 37) battles. He used to dash suddenly out-of the woods and attack the Roman legions. Then he used to recall (§ 31) his horse-soldiers and his chariots. The British leader had many thousands (§ 36) of charioteers. Accordingly he sometimes used-to-carry-off the victory. There-were ten cohorts in a Roman legion, and about (§ 36) five-hundred (§ 36) men in a cohort. Accordingly there-were about five (§ 26) thousand men (*say five thousands of men*) in a legion.

---

§ 39. (*Recapitulation of Nouns of 3rd Declension continued.*)

Caesar hastened to the banks of the river Thames.<sup>4</sup> Where was the 'town' of Cassivellaunus? Caesar does not name the town. The town was not a city. It was not strengthened (§ 30) with walls. It was not London. But it was not far from London.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. § 31, Note 5 (p. 130).

<sup>2</sup> Say *give themselves*, as in § 25 of the story.

<sup>3</sup> *Batāwi* (= Dutch).

<sup>4</sup> In what Case must 'Thames' be? Think of the meaning.

Perhaps<sup>1</sup> it was St. Albans,<sup>2</sup> as some learned men have affirmed. Caesar tells about the town of Cassivellaunus in the fifth book of the Gallic War.

---

§ 40. (*Recapitulation of Nouns of 3rd Declension continued.*)

Caesar's camp was<sup>3</sup> in Kent. There is also a place in South Africa named<sup>4</sup> Caesar's Camp. The tribes of Kent fought bravely for (*on-behalf-of*) their native-land (§4), but the Trinobantes were friends of the Romans and enemies of the Cassi. Accordingly the unhappy Britons fought in-vain. At-length (§25) many states begged peace from (*a*) Caesar. The conditions of peace were hard (say *rough*, §13). After the peace Caesar sold<sup>5</sup> a great multitude of British captives (§19). Thus many British men and women (§20) and children were slaves (§19) of the Romans in the first century before the birth of Christ.

---

§ 41. (*Nouns of 3rd Declension continued.*)<sup>6</sup>

Thus (§16) Caesar carried-off the victory and imposed a tribute upon<sup>7</sup> the inhabitants of South Britain. The Romans carried-off the victory because (§15) they were skilled (§15) in war. The tenth legion was with Caesar in Britain. Caesar loved the tenth legion. In the first expedition, while the Romans hesitated (§25) to fight,

---

<sup>1</sup> For 'perhaps' see *Preparations* § 25.

<sup>2</sup> *Verulamium*.

<sup>3</sup> Remember that the Verb must agree with its Subject (*castra*).

<sup>4</sup> Remember that the Adjective must agree with its Noun. Which is the Noun to which the Adjective 'named' belongs?

<sup>5</sup> *Venum-do*, 'I sell,' is a compound of *do*, 'I give,' meaning literally 'I offer for sale,' and forms its Perfect like *do*.

<sup>6</sup> The Adjectives of the 3rd Declension are deferred till § 42.

<sup>7</sup> Imitate the construction given in § 40 of the story.

the eagle-bearer of the tenth legion leaped<sup>1</sup> into the waves and carried (§6) the Roman eagle (§25) to the land (§4). Accordingly the Romans defeated (§24) the Britons on-account-of (§33) the pluck of the eagle-bearer. The Roman eagles were made-of-silver (§9) and served as<sup>2</sup> flags.

§ 42. (*Adjectives of the 3rd Declension.*)

(A.) The ancient Britons were brave men. They fought with<sup>3</sup> admirable pluck. The bodies of the ancient Britons were big and strong. The Romans were not so (§33) big as the Britons; but by means of the science of war they were able to carry-off the victory from the Britons. Caesar was a distinguished general. He had defeated the brave tribes of Belgic Gaul in a short time. Victory was sweet to Caesar.

(B.) Not all<sup>4</sup> the British states (§40) had fought against Caesar. There had never (§25) been an alliance (§34) of all the tribes of Britain against an enemy. It<sup>5</sup> is wonderful that (§41) the Britons were-able to fight so (§41) successfully against the conquerors of so-many (§40) seas and lands. The name of Caesar was distinguished through (§26) the whole (§16) world (§41). The soldiers of the tenth legion were veterans. It<sup>5</sup> is sweet to fight and, if it is necessary (§24), to die<sup>6</sup> for (§40) one's<sup>7</sup> native-land.

<sup>1</sup> See Ex. § 37, note 2 (p. 134).

<sup>2</sup> Say *were instead-of*; cf. § 33 of the story ("the skins served as sails.")

<sup>3</sup> See Ex. § 20, note 1 (p. 121, on the Ablative without a Preposition).

<sup>4</sup> Adjectives meaning 'all,' unlike other Adjectives, generally come *before* their Nouns in Latin: cf. note 2, p. 111, and Rule 1 of Order, p. 101.

<sup>5</sup> No separate word for 'it'; but the Adjective after 'is' must be in the Neuter Gender, as in § 41 of the story.

<sup>6</sup> Say 'to expire,' *expirare*.

<sup>7</sup> Omit the word 'one's' in translating.

§43. (*Adjectives of 3rd Declension continued.*)

The tribes of Belgic Gaul also were warlike.<sup>1</sup> Caesar had slaughtered (§20) a huge number of the brave Nervii, fighting<sup>2</sup> against the Romans. The British auxiliaries had been useful to<sup>3</sup> the Veneti. Accordingly Caesar waged-war against the "arrogant Britons." And he carried-off a huge number of British slaves and captives.

"The time is short," says my uncle; "it is necessary (§24) to hasten homewards. It<sup>4</sup> has been pleasant to you, as I hope, to see a British ship of-war and to walk to the place where Caesar fought with the Britons." We all<sup>5</sup> approved-of (§41) the opinion of my uncle.

## GOD SAVE THE KING

---

<sup>1</sup> Use *ferox*, which as the name of a ship in the Channel squadron is translated 'the Furious' in §42 of the story. All the names of ships given there can be used as Adjectives, but must then not be spelled with capital letters.

<sup>2</sup> 'Fighting' is an Adjective describing the Nervii. In what Case must it, then, be?

<sup>3</sup> 'Useful to' is like 'dear to' (*Preparations* § 15).

<sup>4</sup> See Ex. §42, note 5 (p. 136).

<sup>5</sup> Say 'all we-approved.'

## APPENDICES.<sup>1</sup>

### I.—ON ADJECTIVES IN *-NDUS*, *A*, *UM* AND NOUNS IN *-NDUM*.

The Adjectives in *-ndus*, *a*, *um* differ from other Adjectives only in the following respects :—

(1) They are all formed from the stems of Verbs. In English, too, we have many Adjectives formed from Verbs, and some of them are similar in meaning to the Latin Adjectives in *-ndus*, *a*, *um*; for instance 'laud-able' (from 'I laud,' Lat. *laudo*), 'lov-able' (in the sense 'worthy to be loved,') 'eat-able' (in the sense 'fit to be eaten.')

(2) They cannot always be translated by Adjectives in English, because English generally has no Adjective with exactly the same meaning; so they have often to be translated by a phrase like 'to-be-loved,' 'to-be-read,' 'to-be-eaten.' Sometimes it is convenient to translate them in other ways.

The following sentences, taken from the story, should be carefully examined.

*Audacia aquiliferi erat laudanda*, 'the courage of the eagle-bearer

---

<sup>1</sup> These Appendices are not intended to be used by the pupil except as a summary and fuller explanation of some of the constructions which have been met with in the text. But they are written with a view to the needs of beginners, and are thrown into a form which the writer has found to be capable of appealing to the minds even of young pupils, if brought before them gradually and on seasonable occasions.



was laud-able or praise-worthy' (§25). Here the Adjective *laudanda* (feminine of *laudandus*, to agree with *audacia*) is formed from the Verb *laudo*, 'I praise,' and it has the same meaning as the English Adjective formed with '-able' or '-worthy;' but we may also translate it by 'worthy-to-be praised,' or simply 'to-be-praised.' This Adjective, like other Adjectives, may be used without the Verb 'to be,' and in any Case; thus we get

NOM. *audacia laudanda*, 'laudable courage'

ACC. *audaciam laudandam*, 'laudable courage'

GEN. *audaciae laudandae*, 'of laudable courage,' etc.

Hence such a phrase may be made to depend on a Preposition, as shown in the next sentence.

*Locus erat idoneus ad navigia applicanda*, 'there was a place suitable for vessels to-be-brought-to-land' (24). Here the phrase *navigia applicanda*, 'vessels to-be-brought-to-land' depends on *ad* in the sense of 'for.' Compare in English such common sentences as 'Ring the bell for the dinner to be got ready.' (Latin *ad cenam parandam*.)

The Nouns in *-ndum* differ from other Nouns only in the following respects :—

(1) They are all formed from the stems of Verbs, just as in English we may form a Noun out of any Verb by adding '-ing.' Thus where in English we speak of 'row-ing,' 'walk-ing,' 'visit-ing,' etc., the Romans used the Nouns *remigandum*, *ambulandum*, *visitandum*, etc.

(2) They are like Verbs in so far as they take the same constructions as the Verbs from which they are formed. So, too, do the English Nouns formed from Verbs; thus we speak of 'rowing quickly,' 'walking slowly' (with Adverbs, though sometimes also with Adjectives), and 'visiting a friend,' 'exploring a country' (with Objects depending on the Nouns in '-ing').

*Labor remigandi magnus erat*, 'the labour of rowing was great' (§29). Here *remigandi* is the Genitive Case of the Noun *remigandum* formed from *remigo*, 'I row.'

*Paratine estis ad ambulandum?* 'are you ready for walking?' (§23). Here *ambulandum* is the Accusative Case of the Noun formed from *ambulo*, 'I walk,' and depends on *ad* meaning 'for.'

*Cupidus erat visitandi et explorandi insulam nostram*, 'he was desirous of visiting and exploring our island' (§28). Here the Genitives of the Nouns *visitandum* and *explorandum* take an Object in the Accusative.

The following sentences, taken from the story, contain further examples of the above constructions (Adjectives and Nouns).

*Virtus militum erat magnopere laudanda* (§29). Here the Adjective is qualified by an Adverb (as other Adjectives may be).

*Navigia novis armis ornanda erant* (§31).

*Locus idoneus est ad copias explicandas* (§25).

*Naves onerariae aptae erant ad onera transportanda* (§32).<sup>1</sup>

*Romani Britannos scientia pugnandi superabant* (§30).

[No example occurs in the story of the Noun in *-ndum* with *est* denoting 'must' or 'ought.' This is a special use and sense, which is best deferred for subsequent study.]

<sup>1</sup>Such sentences may also be translated by an entirely different form of speech in English ('for *deploying* forces.') Here 'deploying' is a Noun formed from the Verb 'deploy.' But this translation leads to confusion with the use of the Latin Noun in *-ndum*, and should therefore be avoided so far as possible by beginners.

## II.—HOW TO TRANSLATE ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS INTO LATIN.

Where English has a Preposition Latin generally has one also. Most of these Latin Prepositions take the Accusative Case, but some of them (especially *ab* or *a*, *cum*, *de*, *ex*, *in* when it means 'in' or 'on,' *pro*, *sub* when it means 'under,' and *sine*) take the Ablative: it should be noted that no Latin Prepositions take the Dative or the Genitive. But it has been seen that 'of' is generally expressed by the Genitive alone, and 'to' very often by the Dative alone; also that 'from,' 'at,' 'in,' 'with,' 'by,' and 'by means of' are sometimes expressed by the Ablative alone. The following rules, based upon examples which have occurred in this book, will give some guidance as to when the above Prepositions are to be translated by Prepositions in Latin and when by a Case without any Preposition; but the rules are only an outline, to be filled up by future reading, and they deal only with the most important usages.

*OF* is generally translated by the Genitive, as in 'the door of the country-house,' *ianua villae* (§1), 'the courage of sailors,' *audacia nautarum* (§2), 'traces of the Romans,' *vestigia Romanorum* (§9), 'a task of great labour,' *opus magni laboris* (= 'very laborious,' §31), 'an abundance of plants,' *copia plantarum* (§3), 'a great number of coins,' *magnus numerus nummorum* (§9).<sup>1</sup>

But (i.) in such phrases as 'some of,' 'many of,' the 'of' may be translated by *ex* with the Ablative; thus 'some of the vessels' may be translated *nonnulla ex navigiis* (§11), 'many of the tribes,' *multi ex populis* (§18).

(ii.) when the phrase 'of —' describes a quality of the person or thing spoken of, it is sometimes translated by the Ablative without a Preposition; thus 'men of robust body' is *homines robusto corpore* (§30): cf. §43, note on p. 99.

---

<sup>1</sup> It may be noted that the 'of' in many of these examples does not denote possession.

*TO* is generally translated by *ad* with the Accusative (or sometimes by *in* with the Accusative, §11) when it comes after a verb of 'going' or any verb that denotes motion, such as 'bring' or 'carry' or 'send:' thus 'I walk to the wood' is *ad silvam ambulo* (§5). But it is sometimes translated by the Accusative without a Preposition, sometimes by the Dative; viz. :—

By the Accusative without a Preposition when it comes before the name of a Town: thus 'he brought his vessels to Dover' is *navigia Dubras applicavit* (§24), 'I walked to London' is *Londinium ambulavi*.

By the Dative in the following cases:

- (i) when it comes after a verb of 'giving'; thus 'it gives delight to Lydia,' is *Lydiae laetitiam dat* (§5), 'they had supplied auxiliaries to the Gauls' is *Gallis auxilia subministraverant* (§27).
- (ii) when it comes after the verb 'to be' in the phrase 'there is to someone' = 'someone has'; thus 'my uncle has coins' is *patruo meo nummi sunt* (§9).
- (iii) when it comes after Adjectives which can take 'to' in English, like 'dear,' 'pleasant,' 'useful'; thus 'he is dear to us' is *nobis carus est* (§15).

*FROM* is generally translated by *ab* or *ex* with the Ablative; but by the Ablative alone—

- (i) when it comes after certain Verbs and Adjectives with the sense of 'free'; thus 'he is free from military service' is *militia vacat* (§6), 'free from lessons' is *liber scholis* (§12).
- (ii) when it comes before the name of a Town and after a Verb of 'going' or any Verb that denotes motion; thus 'they will arrive from Dover' is *Dubris adventabunt* (§22).

*IN* or *AT*<sup>1</sup> is generally translated by *in* with the Ablative; but by the Ablative alone—

- (i) when it comes before a Noun denoting time, such as 'day,' 'month,' 'year,' 'century,' 'hour'; thus 'in the second century' is *secundo saeculo* (§10), 'in the next year' is *proximo anno* (§28), 'at what o'clock?' is *quota hora?* (§21).
- (ii) when it comes before a Noun denoting price or value': thus 'at a great price' is *magno pretio* (§9).

*WITH* is translated by *cum* with the Ablative when it means 'together with' or 'in company with' (as in 'I walk with my aunt,' *cum amita mea ambulo*, §3, or 'fighting with the Romans,' *cum Romanis pugnantes*, §43)<sup>2</sup>; but by the Ablative alone in other senses; viz:—

- (i) when 'with' means 'by means of;' thus 'they used to fight with spears and arrows' is *hastis et sagittis pugnabant* (§18): here 'spears and arrows' are the *instruments* with which they fought. Similarly when 'with' comes after Adjectives meaning 'filled'; thus 'filled with victims' is *plenus victimis* (§20)<sup>3</sup>, 'crowded with children' is *creber pueris et puellis* (§15).
- (ii) when the phrase 'with ——' answers the question 'how?'; thus 'they used to fight with great courage' is *magna audacia pugnabant*. Here 'with great courage' describes the *manner* in which they fought.

<sup>1</sup> When 'at' comes before the name of a Town, it is translated by the Locative without a Preposition; but no example of this Case occurs in this book. The Locative, however, is the same in form as the Ablative, except in the 1st and 2nd Declension, Singular Number.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes *una* 'together' is added, as in 'together with a multitude of Gallic auxiliaries, *una cum multitudine auxiliorum Gallicorum* (§28).

<sup>3</sup> But just as in English we may say not only 'filled *with*' but also 'full *of*,' so in Latin *plenus* may take the Genitive; thus 'full of joys' is *plenus gaudiorum* (§13).

- (iii) when the phrase 'with ——' answers the question 'why?' thus 'the climate was hideous with rains' is *caelum pluviis foedum erat* (§17). Here 'with rains' means 'because of rains.'
- (iv) when the phrase 'with ——' describes a *quality* of the person or thing spoken of'; thus 'a man with a robust body' is *homo robusto corpore* (§30), 'a boy with blue eyes' is *puer oculis caeruleis*.

*BY MEANS OF* is sometimes translated by *per* ('through') with the Accusative, but generally by the Ablative without a Preposition: thus 'they used to fasten their ships by means of iron chains' is *naves catenis ferreis deligabant* (§33), 'he hastened to the Thames by means of uninterrupted marches' is *continuis itineribus ad Tamesam properavit* (§38).

*BY* is sometimes translated by *ab* or *a* with the Ablative, but generally by the Ablative without a Preposition: thus 'by reason (=for the sake) of commerce' is *mercaturae causa* (§19), cf. *animi causa* (§20); 'by land and by sea' is *terra marique* (§43).

### III.—GENERAL RULES OF ORDER.

RULE 1.—Anything that goes with a Noun (excepting a Preposition) is generally put *after* that Noun in Latin; thus 'villa bella,' 'villa amitae meae.' Except Numeral Adjectives and Adjectives meaning 'all,' 'some,' 'many,' 'few.' \*

RULE 2.—Anything that goes with a Verb or an Adjective or an Adverb is generally put *before* that Verb, Adjective or Adverb in Latin; thus 'saepe specto,' 'non specto,' 'scapham specto,' 'in scapha navigo'; 'non magnus'; 'non saepe.'

\* Demonstrative Adjectives (meaning 'this' or 'that') and Interrogative Adjectives (meaning 'which?' or 'what?') also precede their Nouns in Latin, as in English; but the Demonstratives do not occur in this book. An Interrogative occurs in *quota hora?*

# ALPHABETICAL VOCABULARY.

The words printed in black type are *essential words* which need to be learned by heart, as occurring most often in the text and for the sake of their importance.

Words of the third declension have the stem inserted in brackets, except where it is the same as the Nom. Sing. (e.g. *arbor*). To words like *navis* the Gen. Plur. is given. Genders are given where irregular according to the rules on p. 75 and p. 129 (m. = masculine, f. = feminine, n. = neuter).

The figures 1, 2, 3 denote the declension or conjugation.

## A.

**ab** or **ā** (with Abl.), *from*; **ab**  
**occidente parte** (§ 35), *off the*  
*West side, on the West*

**ab-sum**, **ab-esse**, **ā-fui**, *I am distant*,  
*I am absent*

**abundō**, 1, *I abound* (Abl. = *in*)

**accommodātus**, a, um, *suited* [*ac-*  
*comodated*]

**accūsō**, 1, *I accuse*

**acūtus**, a, um, *sharp* [*acute*]

**ad** (with Acc.), *to*; sometimes *for*  
*or at or near* (see §§ 15, 23, 24)

**adhūc**, *hitherto*

**admirābilis**, 3, adj., *admirable*

**ad-sum**, **ad-esse**, **ad-fui**, *I am*  
*present*

**adulescentulus**, 2, *young man*

**adventō**, 1, *I arrive*

**adversus**, a, um, *adverse*

**aedificium**, 2, *building* [*edifice*]

**aedificō**, 1, *I build*

**āēr** (**āēr-**), 3, m., *air*

**aēneus**, a, um, *made of copper*

**aes** (**aer-**), 3, n., *copper* or *brass*

**aestās** (**aestāt-**), 3, *summer*

**aetās** (**-tāt-**), 3, *age*

**affirmō**, 1, *I affirm, state*

**afflictō**, 1, *I wreck* [*afflict*]

**agellus**, 2, *farm, estate*

**ager**, **agr-um**, -ī, -ō, 2, *field*

**agger**, 3, *mound*

**agricola**, 1, *farmer*

**albus**, a, um, *white*

**Alexander**, **Alexandr-um**, -ī, -ō, 2,  
*Alexander*

**aliquandō**, *some day*

**aliquantum**, *a considerable amount*

**alius**, **alia**, **aliud**, *other* (Gen. and  
Dat. Sing. irregular)

**alter**, **altera**, **alterum**, *another, a*  
*second* (Gen. and Dat. Sing.  
irregular)

**altus**, a, um, *high, lofty* [*alti-tude*]

**amābō tē**, *please*

**ambulātiō** (-iōn-), 3, *walk*

**ambulō**, 1, *I walk*

**amīcitia**, 1, *friendship*

**amīcus**, 2, *friend*

**amita**, 1, *aunt*

**amō**, 1, *I love, like*

**amphitheātrum**, 2, *amphitheatre*

**an**, or (in a question)

**ancilla**, 1, *maid-servant*

**ancora**, 1, *anchor*

**Anderida silva**, *the Andredsveald*

**Anglicus**, a, um, *English*

**angulus**, 2, *angle, corner*

**animus**, 2, *mind*: **animus ingratus**,  
*ingratitude*

**annus**, 2, *year* [*annual*]

**ante** (with Acc.), *before*

**anteā** (Adverb), *before*

**antīquus**, a, um, *ancient*

**Antōnius**, 2, *Antony*

**anxius**, a, um, *anxious*

**aper**, **apr-um**, -ī, -ō, 2, *wild boar*

apertus, a, um, *open*  
 applicō, 1, *I bring to land* [apply]  
 appropinquō, 1, *I approach*  
 aptus, a, um, *fitted* [apt]  
 apud (with Acc.), *in the house of*,  
     French *chez*  
 aqua, *water*, 1 [aquarium]  
 aquila, 1, *eagle*  
 aquilifer, 2, *eagle-bearer*  
 āra, 1, *altar*  
 arbor, 3, f., *tree*  
 ārea, 1, *open space* [area]  
 arēna, 1, *sand*  
 argenteus, a, um, *made of silver*  
 argentum, 2, *silver* [French 'argent']  
 ariēs (ariet-), 3, m., *ram*  
 arithmētica, 1, *arithmetic*

arma, neut. plur., 2, *arms, fittings*  
 armātus, a, um, *armed*  
 armentum, 2, *herd*  
 arō, 1, *I plough*  
 arrogans (arrogant-), 3, adj., *arrogant*  
 asper, aspera, asperum, *rough*  
 āter, ātra, ātrum, *dark*  
 atque, *and also, aye and*  
 audācia, 1, *courage, audacity*  
 aureus, a, um, *golden*  
 auscultō, 1, *I listen*  
 autem, *however*  
 auxilium, 2, *help, aid*  
     auxilia (plur.), *auxiliaries*  
 avāritia, 1, *avarice*

## B.

bāca, 1, *berry*  
 barbarus, a, um, *barbarous*  
 basilica, 1, *basilica, church*  
 beātus, a, um, *happy*  
 Belgae, 1, pl., *Belgians*, a tribe in  
     the North of Gaul and also in  
     South Britain (Hampshire)  
 Belgicus, a, um, *Belgian*  
 Belgium, 2, *Belgium*  
 bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike*

bellō, 1, *I wage war*  
 bellum, 2, *war*  
 bellus, a, um, *beautiful, jolly, pretty*  
     [French *bel, belle*]  
 bene, *well*; bene ambulā, § 23  
 bōs (bov-), 3, m. or f., *ox*  
 brevis, 3, adj., *brief, short*  
 Britannia, 1, *Britain*  
 Britannicus, a, um, *British*  
 Britannus, 2, *Briton*

## C.

C. = Gāius (Gāium, Gāī, Gāiō)  
 cachinnō, 1, *I laugh*  
 caelum, 2, *sky, climate*  
 caeruleus, a, um, *blue*  
 Caesar, 3, *Caesar*  
 Calēdonia, 1, *Scotland*  
 Calēdonius, 2, *Caledonian*  
 calor (calōr-), 3, *heat*  
 Cambria, 1, *Wales*  
 campus, 2, *plain*  
 Cantium, 2, *Kent*  
 cantō, 1, *I sing*  
 capillus, 2, *hair*  
 captivus, 2, *captive*  
 captō, 1, *I catch*

caput (capit-), 3, n., *head, chapter*  
 carīna, 1, *keel*  
 cārus, a, um, *dear*  
 casa, 1, *cottage*  
 Cassī, 2, a tribe in Hertfordshire  
 Cassivellaunus, 2, King of the Cassi  
     in Hertfordshire  
 castanea, 1, *chestnut-tree*  
 castellum, 2, *fort* [castle]  
 castra, neut. pl., 2, *camp*  
 catēna, 1, *chain*  
 catulus, 2, *dog*  
 causa, 1, *cause, reason*: causā, *by*  
     *reason, for the sake*  
 celeriter, *quickly*



Celta, 1, *Celt*  
 cēna, 1, *supper, late dinner*  
 cēnō, 1, *I sup, dine*  
 certāmen (-mīn-), 3, *contest*  
 certē, *at any rate*  
 cervus, 2, *stag*  
 cēterī, ae, a, *the others, the rest*  
     cētera (n.) = Eng. 'etcetera'  
 Christus, 2, *Christ*  
 Christiānus, a, um, *Christian*  
 cibus, 2, *food*  
 circiter, *about*  
 circum (Preposition with Acc. ; or  
     Adverb), *around*  
 circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, *I surround*  
 cīvitās (-tāt-), 3, *state [city]*  
 clādēs, 3, *disaster*  
 clārus, a, um, *bright or famous*  
 classiārii, 2, *seamen, men of the fleet*  
 classis (Gen. Pl. classium), 3, *fleet*  
 clivus, 2, *hill, down*  
 cohors (cohort-), 3, *cohort*  
 collis (Gen. Pl. collium), 3, m., *hill*  
 collocō, 1, *I place [locate]*  
 colōnia, 1, *colony*  
 colōrātus, a, um, *sun-burnt*  
     [*coloured*]  
 colōrō, 1, *I colour*  
 columba, 1, *dove, pigeon*  
 commemorō, 1, *I mention [com-*  
     *memorate]*  
 commentārii, 2 pl., *notes, commen-*  
     *taries*  
 comparō, 1, *I get together, prepare*  
 comprobō, 1, *I approve*  
 concursiō (-iōn-), 3, *engagement*  
     [*ex-cursion*]  
 condiciō (-iōn-), 3, *condition*  
 condiscipulus, 2, *school-fellow*  
 confirmō, 1, *I establish [confirm]*

confusus, a, um, *confused*  
 congregō, 1, *I gather together*  
     [*congregation*]  
 consecrātus, a, um, *consecrated*  
 consōbrīna, 1, *cousin (§ 5)*  
 consociō, 1, *I ally*  
 constantia, 1, *constancy, firmness*  
 con-stō, -stāre, -stitī, *I consist [con,*  
     *together, stō, I stand] : constat*  
     (3rd person) = *is known*  
 consultō, *on purpose [by consulta-*  
     *tion]*  
 continuus, a, um, *continued, un-*  
     *interrupted*  
 contrā (with Acc.), *against*  
 cōpia, 1, *abundance*  
     cōpiam dō, *I give opportunity*  
     cōpiae (plur.), *forces*  
 corium, 2, *skin*  
 corpus (corpor-), 3, *body [corpor-al]*  
 corvus, 2, *crow*  
 crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, *crowded*  
     (Abl. = *with*), *frequent*  
 cremō, 1, *I burn [cremation]*  
 creō, 1, *I create*  
 cruciō, 1, *I torture [ex-cruciating]*  
 crustulum, 2, *cake*  
 culpō, 1, *I blame*  
 cultūra, 1, *tillage, cultivation, cul-*  
     *ture*  
 cum (with Abl.), *together with*  
     *with*  
 cum, *when*  
 cupidē, *eagerly*  
 cupidus, a, um, *desirous, eager*  
 cūr, *why*  
 cūra, 1, *care*  
 cūrō, 1, *I care for, attend to, pro-*  
     *vide (§ 22)*  
 custōs (custōd-), 3, *guard, guardian*

## D.

dē (with Abl.), *about, down from*  
 dēbellō, 1, *I defeat*  
 decimus, a, um, *tenth*  
 dēclārō, 1, *I declare*  
 dēclinō, *I turn aside [decline]*

dēfectiō (-iōn-), 3, *defection*  
 dēfensor (dēfensōr-), 3, *defender*  
 dēlectāmentum, 2, *delight*  
 dēlectō, 1, *I delight*  
 dēliberō, 1, *I deliberate*

dēligō, 1, *I fasten*  
 ad ancoram dēligō, *I anchor*  
 dēmonstrō, 1, *I point out*  
 dēnegō, 1, *I say no [deny]*  
 densus, a, um, *dense, thick*  
 dēplōrō, 1, *I deplore, lament*  
 dērivātus, a, um, *derived*  
 dē-sum, dē-esse, dē-fui, *I am wanting*  
 deus, 2, *god*  
 dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right*  
 dextra, 1, *right hand*  
 dicō, dicere, dixi, 3, *I say*  
 digitus, 2, *finger [digit]*  
 discipulus, 2, *pupil [disciple]*  
 discordia, 1, *quarrel, discord*  
 disputō, 1, *I dispute*  
 di-stō, 1, *I am distant*  
 diū, *long, for a long time*  
 diurnus, a, um, *of the day*  
 dīversus, a, um, *diverse, different (ā, from)*

dō, dare, dedī, *I give, set, put (in fugam, to flight)*  
 doctus, a, um, *learned [doctor]*  
 domesticus, a, um, *internal [domestic]*  
 domina, 1, *mistress [dame]*  
 domus (irregular, f), *house, home*  
 domī, *at home*  
 domum, *homewards (home)*  
 Druidae, 1, pl., *Druids*  
 dubitō, 1, *I hesitate, doubt*  
 Dubrae, 1, pl., *Dover*  
 ducentī, ae, a, *two hundred*  
 dulcis, 3, adj., *sweet, pleasant*  
 dum, *while*  
 duo, duae, duo, *two*  
 duodecimus, a, um, *twelfth*  
 duodēsexāgēsīmus, a, um, *58th*  
 dux (duc-), 3, *leader, general*

## E.

ecce, *behold*  
 ego, *I*  
 ēgregiē, *excellently*  
 eques (equit-), 3, *horse-soldier*  
 equitō, 1, *I ride*  
 equus, 2, *horse*  
 errō, 1, *I err*  
 esca, 1, *food, eating*  
 esse, *to be*  
 essedārius, 2, *charioteer*  
 essedum, 2, *chariot*  
 et, *and*:  
 et . . . et, *both . . . and*  
 etiam, *also, even*  
 eugē, *bravo!* (ē in Plautus)

ex (with Abl.), *out of, from*  
 excavō, 1, *I excavate*  
 exclāmō, 1, *I exclaim*  
 existimō, 1, *I consider [estimate]*  
 expeditiō (-iōn-), 3, *expedition*  
 explicō, 1, *I deploy, arrange*  
 explōrō, 1, *I explore*  
 exportō, 1, *I export, carry out*  
 expugnō, 1, *I storm, take by storm*  
 expectātiō (-iōn-), 3, *expectation*  
 exspectō, 1, *I expect, await*  
 ex-stō, -stāre, -stitī, *I exist, remain, am extant (§ 39=stand out)*

## F.

fabricō, 1, *I manufacture [fabricate]*  
 fābula, 1, *play, drama [fable]*  
 facinus (facinor-), 3, *deed, achievement*  
 fāgus, 2, f., *beech*

fānum, 2, *shrine*  
 fatigātus, a, um, *tired [fatigued]*  
 fēmina, 1, *woman [hence 'feminine']*

fenestra, 1, *window*  
 fera, 1, *wild beast*  
 ferē, *almost, about*  
 fēriae, 1 pl., *holidays*  
 ferina, 1, *flesh of wild animals, game*  
 ferox (ferōc-), 3, adj., *warlike*  
 ferrātus, a, um, *fitted with iron*  
 ferreus, a, um, *made of iron*  
 ferus, a, um, *savage*  
 festinō, 1, *I hurry*  
 fidus, a, um, *faithful*  
 figura, 1, *figure*  
 filia, 1, *daughter*  
 filius, 2 (Voc. fili), *son*  
 finis, 3, *end*; Plur. fines, m.,  
 (Gen. finium), *boundaries*  
 firmitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, *firmness*  
 firmō, 1, *I strengthen* [make firm]  
 flāvus, a, um, *yellow*  
 flō, 1, *I blow* (said of the wind)  
 flūmen (-min-), 3, *river*  
 fluvius, 2, *river*

Gallia, 1, *Gaul*  
 Gallicus, a, um, *Gallic*: fretum  
 Gallicum, *the English channel*  
 gallina, 1, *hen*  
 Gallus, 2, a *Gaul, an inhabitant of*  
 Gaul  
 gallus, 2, *cock*  
 gaudium, 2, *joy, delight*  
 gemma, 1, *gem, precious stone*  
 generōsus, a, um, *nobly born*  
 gens (gent-), 3, *race* [gentile]

habitō, 1, *I dwell*; with Acc., *I*  
 inhabit  
 hasta, 1, *spear*  
 herba, 1, *grass, herb*  
 Hibernia, 1, *Ireland*  
 Hibernicus, a, um, *Irish*  
 hīc, *here, at this point*  
 hiems (hiem-), 3, *winter*  
 Hispānia, 1, *Spain*  
 historicus, a, um, *historical*  
 hodiē, *today, at the present day,*  
*nowadays*

focus, 2, *hearth*  
 foedus, a, um, *hideous*  
 forma, 1, *form, shape*  
 formidō, 1, *I fear*  
 fortasse, *perhaps*  
 fortis, 3, adj., *brave, strong*  
 fortiter, *bravely*  
 fortūna, 1, *fortune, fate*  
 Francogallicus, a, um, *French*  
 frēnum, 2, *bridle*  
 fretum, 2, *channel, arm of the sea*  
 frūgifer, frūgifera, frūgiferum, *fruit-*  
*ful* [fruit-bearing]  
 frūmentum, 2, *corn*  
 frustrā, *in vain*  
 fuga, 1, *flight*  
 fugō, 1, *I put to flight, rout*  
 fugātus, a, um, *routed*  
 fundāmentum, 2, *foundation*  
 fūnis (Gen. Plur. fūnium), 3, m.,  
*rope*

## G.

genus (gener-), 3, *kind* [gener-al]  
 Germānicus, a, um, *German* (adj.)  
 Germānus, 2, *German* (noun)  
 glōria, 1, *glory, fame*  
 Graecia, 1, *Greece*  
 Graecus, a, um, *Greek*  
 grāmineus, a, um, *grassy*  
 grandis, 3, adj., *big* [grand]  
 grātus, a, um, *pleasing*  
 gubernō, 1, *I steer, guide* [govern]  
 gustō, 1, *I taste*

## H.

hodiernus, a, um, *of the present day*  
 homō (homin-), 3, *man*  
 hōra, 1, *hour*  
 hortus, 2, *garden*  
 hostis (Gen. Plur. hostium), 3,  
*enemy*  
 hūiusmodi, *of this kind*  
 hūmānus, a, um, *human, civilized*  
 humō, 1, *I bury*

## I.

iam, *already, now, even*  
 iānuā, 1, *door, gate*  
 ibi, *there*  
 idōneus, a, um, *fitted, suitable*  
 iēiūnus, a, um, *hungry*  
 ientāculum, 2, *breakfast*  
 igitur, *therefore, then*  
 ignāvus, a, um, *cowardly*  
 ignōrō, 1, *I do not know* [ignore]  
 ignōtus, a, um, *unknown*  
 ille, illa, illud, *yon, that one*  
 illīc, *yonder*  
 illustrō, 1, *I light up* [illustrate]  
 imber (imbr-), 3, *shower of rain*  
 immigrō, 1, *I immigrate*  
 imperātor (imperātōr-), 3, *general*  
     [emperor]  
 imperium, 2, *command* [empire]  
 imperō (with Dat.), *I impose (upon)*  
 impiger, impigra, impigrum,  
     *active (not sluggish)*  
 impigrē, *actively, bravely*  
 impius, a, um, *unnatural* [impious]  
 implorō, 1, *I implore*  
 importō, 1, *I import, carry in*  
 impugnō, 1, *I attack*  
 in (with Abl.), *in or on*  
     (with Acc.), *into or onto*  
 incitō, 1, *I urge, urge on, incite*  
 incola, 1, *inhabitant*  
 incommodum, 2, *disaster*  
 incultus, a, um, *uncultivated*

inde, *thence*  
 infinitus, a, um, *infinite*  
 ingens (ingent-), 3, *adj., huge*  
 ingrātus, a, um, *unpleasing, un-*  
     *grateful*  
 inhūmānus, a, um, *uncivilized*  
 inopia, 1, *want, poverty*  
 inquam, *say I, I say*; inquit, *says*  
     *he, he says*; inquit, *we say*;  
     inquiet, *they say*  
 insectātiō (-iōn-), 3, *pursuit*  
 insignis, 3, *adj., distinguished*  
 in-stō, -stāre, -stitī (with Dat.), *I*  
     *pursue*  
 insula, 1, *island*  
 inter (with Acc.), *between or during*  
     *or among*  
 interdum, *sometimes*  
 intereā, *meanwhile*  
 interior (interiōr-), 3, *interior, inner*  
 interrogō, 1, *I ask, enquire*  
 intervallum, 2, *interval*  
 intrā (with Acc.), *within*  
 intrō, 1, *I enter*  
 irrigō, 1, *I water* [irrigate], § 6  
 ita, *thus*  
 itaque, *accordingly, therefore*  
 iter (itiner-), 3, *n., march*  
 iterum, *a second time*  
 iudicō, 1, *I judge*  
 iustus, a, um, *just, proper*  
 iuvat (3rd pers. sing.) *it delights*

## L.

labor (labōr-), 3, *labour, toil*  
 labōrō, 1, *I labour, am in difficulties*  
 laetitia, 1, *delight, pleasure*  
 lāmīna, 1, *plate*  
 Latīnus, a, um, *Latin*  
 lātus, a, um, *wide, broad*  
 latus (later-), 3, *side* [later-al]  
 laudandus, a, um, *laudable*  
 laudō, 1, *I praise*  
 lavō, 1, *Perf. irregular, I wash*  
 lēgātus, 2, *lieutenant-general*  
 legiō (-iōn-), 3, *legion*

lēnis, 3, *adj., gentle* [lenient]  
 lentē, *slowly*  
 levō, 1, *I lighten, relieve* (§ 5)  
 libenter, *gladly, willingly*  
 liber, libr-um, -ī, -ō, 2, *book*  
 līber, lībera, līberum, *free* (some-  
     times with Abl. = *from*)  
 liberī, 2 pl., *children* (properly an  
     adjective meaning "free ones,"  
     *i.e., children of free-born*  
     *parents*)  
 lineus, a, um, *made of flax*

lingua, 1, *tongue, language*  
 linum, 2, *flax*  
 littera, 1, *letter (of the alphabet)*  
 litterārius, a, um, *connected with letters (litterae), literary*  
 litus (litor-), 3, *coast*  
 locus, 2, *place (pl. loca, n.), or passage of a book (pl. loci, m.)*  
 Londinium, 2, *London*  
 longē, *far*

longitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, *length [longitude]*  
 longus, a, um, *long*  
 lucrum, 2, *gain, profit*  
 lūcus, 2, *grove*  
 lūdus, 2, *game or elementary school*  
 lūna, 1, *moon*  
 lupus, 2, *wolf*  
 luscinia, 1, *nightingale*  
 lux (lūc-), 3, *light*

## M.

māchina, 1, *machine*  
 magister, 2, *schoolmaster, teacher*  
 magistra, 1, *school-mistress, teacher*  
 magnificus, a, um, *magnificent*  
 magnitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, *size, magnitude*  
 magnopere (= magnō opere), *greatly*  
 magnus, a, um, *great, large*  
 māior (māiōr-), 3, *larger, greater*  
 mandō, 1, *I commit, entrust*  
 māne (indeclinable), *morning, properly in the morning*  
 mare (declined § 36), 3, *sea*  
 margarīta, 1, *pearl [Margaret]*  
 maritimus, a, um, *of the sea, maritime*  
 māteria, 1, *timber [material]*  
 mathēmaticus, a, um, *mathematical*  
 maximē, *chiefly*  
 mē, *me*  
 mēcum, *with me*  
 mediocriter, *moderately, tolerably*  
 mediterrāneus, a, um, *midland, inland: mediterrānea, pl., n., the midlands*  
 medius, a, um, *mid, middle*  
 membrum, 2, *limb [member]*  
 mercātūra, 1, *commerce [merchandise]*  
 mergus, 2, *sea-gull*  
 meridiānus, a, um, *southern [from meridiēs, mid-day]*

metallum, 2, *metal*  
 meus (Voc. mī), mea, meum, *my*  
 migrō, 1, *I migrate*  
 mihi, *to me*  
 miles (milit-), 3, *soldier*  
 milia, 3, *miles, lit. thousands (of paces)*  
 militia, 1, *military service*  
 militō, 1, *I serve*  
 ministrō, 1, *I attend [minister]*  
 mīrus, a, um, *wonderful*  
 miser, misera, miserum, *unhappy, miserable*  
 mōbilitās (-tāt-), 3, *mobility*  
 Mōna, 1, *Isle of Anglesey*  
 monstrans (monstrant-), 3, *adj., pointing*  
 monstrō, 1, *I show, point*  
 monumentum, 2, *monument*  
 mora, 1, *delay*  
 mortuus, a, um, *dead*  
 mōs (mōr-), 3, *custom*  
 mox, *in due course (soon)*  
 multitūdō (-tūdin-), 3, *multitude*  
 multus, a, um, *much: multī, ac, a, many; multum (adv.), much, very much, very; multō, by much (multō māior, much greater, lit. greater by much)*  
 mūnitio, 3, *bulwark*  
 murmurō, 1, *I murmur*  
 mūrus, 2, *wall*

## N.

nam, *for*  
 narrō, 1, *I tell, narrate*  
 nātiō (-iōn-), 3, *tribe [nation]*  
 natō, 1, *I swim, bathe*  
 nātūra, 1, *nature*  
 nātus, a, um, *born*  
     ante Christum nātum = B. C.  
     post Christum nātum = A.D.  
 nauta, 1, *sailor*  
 nāvigātiō (-iōn-), 3, *voyage*  
 nāvigium, 2, *vessel, ship*  
 nāvigō, 1, *I sail [navigate]*  
 nāvis (Gen. Plur. nāvium), 3, *ship*;  
     nāvis longa, *ship of war*  
 -ne marks a question  
 nebula, 1, *cloud*  
 nec (or neque) *nor, and not*  
     nec . . . nec, *neither . . . nor*  
 necesse, *necessary* (Dat. = *for*)  
 Nervii, a tribe in Belgium  
 nīdificō, 1, *I build a nest*  
 nīdus, 2, *nest*  
 niger, nigra, nigrum, *black [nigger]*  
 nihil, *nothing*  
 nimis, *too*  
 nisi, *unless, if . . . not, except*  
 nōbīs, *to us*  
     nōbīscum, *with us*

noctū, *by night, in the night-time*  
 nocturnus, a, um, *of the night*  
 nōmen (-min-), 3, *name [nominal]*  
 nōminātus, a, um, *named*  
 nōminō, 1, *I name, call*  
 nōn, *not*  
     nōndum, *not yet*  
     nōn iam, *no longer, not any longer*  
     nōnne (= nōn + ne), *not ?*  
     nōnnulli, ae, a, *some [nōn, not, nulli, none]*  
     nōnnumquam, *sometimes (lit. not never)*  
 nōnus, a, um, *ninth*  
 nōs, *we or us, ourselves*  
 noster, nostra, nostrum, *our*  
 nōtus, a, um, *known*  
 novus, a, um, *new*  
 nox (noct-), 3, *night*  
 nūdō, 1, *I strip, deprive* (Abl. = *of*)  
 nullus, a, um, *not any*  
 num, *whether, marking a question*  
 numerus, 2, *number*  
 nummus, 2, *coin*  
 numquam, *never*  
 nunc, *now*  
 nuntiō, 1, *I announce*  
 nūper, *recently, lately, not long ago*

## O.

obscurō, 1, *I obscure*  
 obses (obsid-), 3, *hostage*  
 occidens (occident-), 3, *the West*  
 occultō, 1, *I hide*  
 occupō, 1, *I seize [occupy]*  
 oceanus, 2, *ocean*  
 octingenti, ae, a, *eight hundred*  
 octōgintā, *eighty*  
 oculus, 2, *eye*  
 officium, 2, *duty*  
 omnia, Neut. Plur. of omnēs, *all things, everything*  
 omninō, *altogether*  
 omnis, 3, adj., *every*; Plur. omnēs, m. and f., *omnia, n., all*  
 onerārius, a, um, *of burden*

onus (oner-), 3, *burden [ex-oner-ate]*  
 opera, 1, *attention, study*  
 oppidum, 2, *town*  
 opportunē, *in the nick of time*  
 oppugnō, 1, *I attack*  
 optimē, *excellently, hurrah !*  
 opus (oper-), 3, *work [oper-ation]*  
     opus (with Abl.), *need*  
     quid opus, *what need*  
 ōra, 1, *shore*  
 orbis, 3, m., *circle [orb]*; orbis terrarum = *the world*  
 ordō (-din-), 3, m., *rank [ordin-ary]*  
 oriens (orient-), 3, *the East [oriental]*  
 origō (orīgin-), 3, *origin*  
 oriundus, a, um, *sprung*

ornandus, a, um, *fit to be equipped*.  
 ornātus, a, um; *ornamented*  
 ornō, I, *I equip, ad-orn*

orō, I, *I ask, entreat*  
 ostrea, I, *oyster*  
 ovis (Gen. Plur. ovium), 3, *sheep*

## P.

pācātus, a, um, *subdued, pacified*  
 palūs (palūd-), 3, *marsh*  
 parātus, a, um, *prepared, ready*  
 parō, I, *I prepare, prepare the way*  
     *for (§ 20)*  
 pars (part-), 3, *part*  
 parvus, a, um, *small, little*  
 patria, I, *country, fatherland*  
 patruus, 2, *uncle*  
 paucī. ae, a, few, *a few*  
 paulum, *a little*  
 pāx (pāc-), 3, *peace*  
 pecūnia, I, *money*  
 pedes (pedit-), 3, *foot-soldier*  
 pellis (Gen. Plur. pellium), 3, *skin,*  
     *hide*  
 per (with Acc.), *through, or during*  
 pergrandis, 3, adj., *very big*  
 pergrātus, a, um, *very pleasing*  
 periculōsus, a, um, *perilous, danger-*  
     *ous*  
 periculum, 2, *peril, danger*  
 peritus, a, um, *skilled* (Gen. = in)  
 perlucidus, a, um, *transparent*  
     *[pellucid]*  
 perturbō, I, *I perturb, disturb,*  
     *throw into confusion*  
 pēs (ped-), 3, m., *foot; pedibus, on*  
     *foot*  
 pharus, 2, f., *light-house*  
 piger, pigra, pigrum, *lazy, sluggish*  
 pīla, I, *ball [pill]*  
 pīnus, 2 (partly 4), f., *pine*  
 piscātōrius, a, um, *fishing*  
 plānē, *utterly, quite*  
 planta, I, *plant*  
 plānus, a, um, *flat [plane]*  
 plēnus, a, um, *with Gen. full,*  
     *with Abl. filled*  
 plērumque, *mostly, generally*  
 plumbum, 2, *lead*  
 plūs (plūr-), *more [hence 'Plural']*  
 pluvia, I, *rain*  
 poēta, I, *poet*

pōmum, 2, *apple*  
 pondus (ponder-), 3, *weight*  
 populus, 2, *tribe [a people]*  
 porcus, 2, *pig [pork]*  
 portō, I, *I carry*  
 possum (= pot-sum), posse (= pot  
     esse), potuī, *I am able*  
 post (with Acc.), *after, behind*  
 postquam, *after (= when)*  
 postrīdiē, *on the next day*  
 postulō, I, *I demand*  
 praecipitō, I, *I hurl [precipitate]*  
 praecipuus, a, um, *especial, par-*  
     *ticular*  
 praeclārus, a, um, *famous*  
 praeda, I, *prey, booty*  
 praefectus, 2, *officer [prefect]*  
     praefectus classis, *admiral*  
 praeprō, I, *I prepare*  
 prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī, *I perform,*  
     *exhibit*  
 prae-sum, -esse, -fuī (with Dat.),  
     *I am in command of*  
 praetereā, *besides*  
 prandium, 2, *lunch*  
 pretium, 2, *price*  
 primō, *at first*  
 primus, a, um, *first*  
 princeps (princip-), 3, *prince*  
 prior (priōr-), 3, *former [prior]*  
 prō (with Abl.), *instead of, for*  
 procella, I, *storm*  
 prōconsul, 3, *proconsul, governor*  
 procul, *far*  
 proelium, 2, *battle*  
 profundus, a, um, *deep [profound]*  
 promunturium, 2, *promontory*  
 prope (with Acc.), *near*  
 properō, I, *I hasten*  
 propinquus, a, um, *neighbouring*  
 propior, propius, *nearer*  
 prōpositum, 2, *proposal*  
 propter (with Acc.), *on account of*  
 prōpulsō, I, *I drive back*

prosperē, *successfully*  
 prō-sum, -esse, -fuī (with Dat.),  
*I am helpful, do good*  
 prōvolō, 1, *I dash forth*  
 proximus, a, um, *nearest, next, last*  
 pruīna, 1, *frost*  
 puella, 1, *girl*  
 puer, 2, *boy*  
 pugna, 1, *fight, battle*

pugnans (pugnant-), 3, adj., *fighting*  
 pugnō, 1, *I fight*  
 pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *fine, beautiful, handsome*  
 pulchrē, *beautifully*  
 puppis (Gen. Plur. puppium), 3,  
*stern, poop*  
 putō, 1, *I fancy, think, suppose*

## Q.

quam, *how, as, than*  
 quandō, *when*  
 quantopere, *how much*  
 quārē (=quā rē, *by what thing*), *why*  
 quartus, a, um, *fourth*  
 quattuor, *four*  
 quattuordecim, *fourteen*  
 quia, *because*  
 quingentī, ae, a, *five hun. red*  
 quinquāgēsīmus, a, um, *fiftieth*

quinque, *five*  
 quintus, a, um, *fifth*  
 quō, *whither, to which*  
 quod, *that*  
 quōmodō, *how*  
 quondam, *once on a time, formerly*  
 quoque, *too, also, even*  
 tum quoque, *then too, even then*  
 quota hōra est? *what o'clock is it?*  
 quotā hōrā, *at what o'clock?*

## R.

recreō, 1, *I refresh (mē, myself)*  
 rectē, *rightly*  
 redambulō, 1, *I walk back*  
 rēgalis, 3, adj., *royal*  
 rēgina, 1, *queen*  
 rēgulus, 2, *ruler, petty king*  
 reliquiae, 1, pl., *relics*  
 reliquus, a, um, *the rest, the remaining*  
 rēmigō, 1, *I row*  
 remōtus, a, um, *remote*  
 rēmus, 2, *oar*  
 reparō, 1, *I refit, repair*  
 reportō, 1, *I carry off (or back)*  
 reservō, 1, *I reserve*  
 rēvērā, *really*  
 revocō, 1, *I recall*

rex (rēg-), 3, *king*  
 Rhēnus, 2, *the Rhine*  
 rīpa, 1, *bank*  
 rīvus, 2, *stream [river]*  
 rōbur (rōbor-), 3, *oak, strength*  
 rōbustus, a, um, *robust, sturdy*  
 Rōma, 1, *Rome*  
 Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman*  
 rosa, 1, *rose, rose-tree*  
 rostrum, 2, *beak, ram*  
 rota, 1, *wheel*  
 ruber, rubra, rubrum, *red*  
 rūinae, 1, pl., *ruins*  
 rusticus, a, um, *rustic*  
 Rutupiae, 1, pl., *Richborough*  
 Rutupinus, a, um, *belonging to Richborough*

## S.

sacer, sacra, sacrum, *sacred*  
 sacra, pl. n., *sacred rites*  
 sacrificō, 1, *I sacrifice*

saeculum, 2, *century*  
 saepe, *often*  
 saevus, a, um, *savage, cruel*



sagitta, 1, *arrow*  
 salūtō, 1, *I salute, greet*  
 satiātus, a, um, *satisfied*  
 satis, *sufficiently, enough*  
 scapha, 1, *boat* [skiff]  
 schola, 1, *school*; pl. *lessons*  
 scientia, 1, *science, knowledge*  
 scopulus, 2, *cliff, rock*  
 Scōticus, a, um, *Scottish*  
 scriptitō, 1, *I write, scribble*  
 sē, *himself, themselves*: inter sē,  
     *among themselves, with one another*  
 secundus, a, um, *second*  
 sed, *but*  
 sententia, 1, *opinion*  
 sēparō, 1, *I separate*  
 septentrionēs, *the North*  
 septimus, a, um, *seventh*  
 septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred*  
 sēpulchrum, 2, *tomb, sepulchre*  
 serēnus, a, um, *clear* [serene]  
 sērō, *late*  
 sērvō, 1, *I save, preserve, watch*  
 sērvus, 2, *slave*  
 sescentī, ae, a, *six hundred*  
 sī, *if*  
 sīc, *so, thus, as follows*  
 sīcut, *as* (lit. *so as, just as*)  
 signum, 2, *sign, flag*  
 silva, 1, *wood, forest*  
 simulācrum, 2, *image*  
 sine (with Abl.), *without*  
 situs, a, um, *situated*  
 sive . . . sive, *whether . . . or*  
 sociētās (-tāt-), 3, *alliance* [society]

sōl, 3, *the sun*  
 solum, 2, *soil*  
 solum, *only*  
 somniō, 1, *I dream*  
 sonus, 2, *sound*  
 spectō, 1, *I see, watch, gaze at*  
 specula, 1, *watch-tower*  
 spērō, 1, *I hope*  
 splendor (splendōr-), 3, *splendour*  
 spūmifer, spūmifera, spūmiferum,  
     *foamy* [spūma, *foam*, -fer,  
     *bearing*]  
 spūmō, 1, *I foam*  
 stabilitās (-tāt-) 3, *stability*  
 statīō (-iōn-) 3, *station, roadstead*  
 statūra, 1, *height, stature*  
 stella, 1, *star*  
 stō, stāre, stetī, 1, *I stand*  
 studiōsus, a, um, *fond, studious*  
 stultitia, 1, *folly*  
 sub (with Abl.), *under, down in*;  
     (with Acc.), *down into, down*  
     *to, up to*  
 subitō, *suddenly*  
 subministrō, 1, *I supply*  
 sudis (Gen. Plur. sudium), 3, *stake*  
 sum, esse, fuī, *I am*  
 summus, a, um, *chief*  
 super (with Acc.), *over, above*  
 superior (superiōr-), 3, *previous,*  
     *past*; *superior, victorious*  
 superō, 1, *I surpass, overcome*  
 suus, a, um, *his (or his own), their*  
     *(or their own)*; suī, *his (or*  
     *their) own men*

## T.

taberna, 1, *inn* [tavern]  
 tam, *so*: tam . . . quam, *so . . . as*  
 tamen, *nevertheless, however*  
 Tamesa, 1, m., *Thames*  
 tandem, *at length*  
 tantum, *so much, or only*  
 tē, *thee, you*; tēcum, *with thee,*  
     *with you*  
 tegimen (-min-), 3, *covering*  
 temperō, 1, *I cool, temper*

tempestās (-tāt-), 3, *tempest, weather*  
 tempus (tempor-), 3, *time* [tempor-  
     *ary*]  
 tenebrae, 1, Plur., *darkness*  
 terra, 1, *land*  
 tertius, a, um, *third*  
 tertius decimus, *thirteenth*  
 testimōnium, 2, *testimony, evidence*  
 testūdō (-tūdin-), 3, *tortoise-shell,*  
     *shelter*

tintinnābulum, 2, *bell*  
 tonans (tonant-), 3, adj., *thundering*  
 tormentum, 2, *hurling machine*  
 tot (indeclinable adj.), *so many*  
 tōtus, a, um (Gen. and Dat. Sing. irregular), *whole*  
 tranquillus, a, um, *calm, tranquil*  
 trans (with Acc.), *across*  
 transportō, i, *I transport*  
 trecenti, ae, a, *three hundred*  
 trēs (m., f.), tria (n.), *three*  
 tribūtum, 2, *tribute*  
 Trinobantēs, 3, plur., a tribe in Essex

triplex (triplic-), 3, adj., *triple*  
 triquetrus, a, um, *triangular*  
 triumphō, i, *I triumph, exult*  
 tropaeum, 2, *trophy*  
 trucidō, i, *I slaughter, murder*  
 tū, thou, you  
 tum, then (=at that time or there-upon)  
 tumulus, 2, *mound*  
 turbulentus, a, um, *rough, turbulent*  
 turris (Gen. Plur. turrium), 3, *turret*  
 tūtus, a, um, *safe*  
 tuus, a, um, *thy, your*

## U.

ubi, *where*  
 ullus, a, um, *any* (Gen. and Dat. Sing. irregular)  
 ulmus, 2, f., *elm-tree*  
 umbra, i, *shade, shadow*  
 ūnā, together; ūnā cum, together with  
 unda, i, *wave*  
 unde, *whence*  
 undecimus, a, um, *eleventh*  
 ūniversus, a, um, *all together* [universal]

ūnus, a, um (Gen. and Dat. Sing. irregular), *one*  
 urbs (urb-), 3, *city* [urban]  
 urna, i, *urn*  
 ursus, 2, *bear*  
 ūsītātus, a, um, *used, usual, common*  
 usque ad, *right on till*  
 ut, *how or as*  
 ūtilis, 3, adj., *useful*

## V.

vacca, i, *cow*  
 vacō, i, *I am free* [vacant]  
 vadum, 2, *shallow place, shoal, ford*  
 validus, a, um, *strong*  
 vallum, 2, *rampart*  
 varius, a, um, *varied*  
 vastō, i, *I lay waste* [de-vast-ate]  
 vastus, a, um, *wild, waste* [vast]  
 vehiculum, 2, *carriage* [vehicle]  
 vel, or  
 vēlum, 2, *sail*; vēla dare, *to set sail*  
 velut, *as, even as* [vel, even; ut, as]  
 vērāticus, a, um, *connected with hunting*  
 Venetī, 2, pl., a tribe on the West Coast of Gaul

venia, i, *pardon*  
 Venta Belgāum, i, *Winchester*  
 ventus, 2, *wind*  
 vēnum-dō, -dare, -dedī, *I sell* [vēnum, for sale; dō, I offer]  
 vērus, a, um, *true*; vēra, *the truth* (lit. *true things*); vērō, *in truth, indeed*  
 vesper, 2, *evening* or *evening star* [vespers]  
 vester, vestra, vestrum, *your* (of several persons)  
 vestigium, 2, *vestige, trace*  
 vestimentum, 2, *garment* [vestment]  
 veterānus, a, um, *veteran, old*  
 vetō, i, *I forbid*

vexō, 1, *I annoy, vex*  
 via, 1, *road, way*; dē viā, *from the road*; in viam mē dō, *I give myself to the road, I start*; inter viam, *on the way*  
 victitō, 1, *I live*  
 victor (victōr-), 3, *victor*  
 victōria, 1, *victory*  
 vicus, 2, *village*  
 vīgintī (indeclinable), *twenty*  
 villa, 1, *country-house, villa*  
 viola, 1, *violet*  
 violō, 1, *I violate*

vir, 2, *man*  
 virtūs (virtūt-), 3, *pluck, courage* [virtue]  
 visitō, 1, *I visit*  
 vīta, 1, *life*  
 vitō, 1, *I avoid*  
 vitrea, 2, pl. n., *glass vessels*  
 vitrum, 2, *wood*  
 vix, *scarcely, hardly*  
 vōbīs, *to you*; vōbīscum, *with you*  
 volitō, 1, *I fly*  
 vōs, *you* (plural)  
 vulnus (vulner), 3, *wound* [vulnerable]

# ORA MARITIMA SERIES

EDITED BY

PROFESSOR E. A. SONNENSCHN, D.LITT.

Published by Messrs. SWAN SONNENSCHN & Co., LTD., London, and  
THE MACMILLAN Co., New York.

Each of the Readers in this series consists of a continuous story written in the language to be studied, and so constructed as to form the basis of a systematic study of Grammar. They thus combine the interest and vitality of a real story with a thorough training in the fundamentals of the language concerned.

The series at present contains the following volumes :—

**ORA MARITIMA:** a Latin Story for Beginners, with Grammar and Exercises. By Professor SONNENSCHN. (*Thirtieth Thousand, crown 8vo, price 2s., subject to discount.*)

The scene of the story is laid on the South Coast of England, and includes a sketch of the ancient Britons and of Cæsar's invasions of Britain.

## OPINIONS

"The book is just *AI*, clearly right in conception and admirably executed."—P. A. BARNETT, M.A., H.M. Chief Inspector for the Training of Teachers.

"We have adopted both *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria* in our Latin classes at Manchester Grammar School, and have never had reason to regret their adoption. Both books have interest and continuity, and both lend themselves excellently to oral practice."—J. L. PATON, M.A., High Master of the Manchester Grammar School.

"The most attractive introduction to Latin that has come under my notice, and I have seen most of them in the secondary schools which I inspect."—JOHN KERR, LL.D., late H.M. Chief Inspector of Schools and Training Colleges in Scotland.

"It makes a new departure in the teaching of Latin that ought to be productive of great good. I am in entire sympathy with its method."—A. E. SCUGAL, H.M. Senior Chief Inspector of Schools in Scotland.

"I have used *Ora Maritima* in actual teaching, and have found it both interesting and instructive to the pupil."—Professor J. P. POSTGATE, Litt.D.

"*Ora Maritima* proves an ideal book for a first reader."—W. H. D. ROUSE, Litt.D., Head Master of the Perse School, Cambridge.

“Exactly what is needed to strike a mean between the wholly conversational method, which means no grammar, and the solely grammatical method, which means no speech or life.”—SYBIL F. PARTRIDGE, Principal of St. Mary’s Hall, Liverpool.

“This is a charming book. We know no better epithet by which to describe such an introduction to the Latin tongue. . . . It is giving a strong recommendation to say, as we gladly do, that our author has given us the ideal book which he formerly described.”—*Secondary Education*

“We can conceive no more delightful book for the induction of youth into the paths of Latin.”—*The Monthly Register*.

“An interesting experiment, ably carried out.”—*Journal of Education*.

“It aims at teaching a little thoroughly, and it succeeds.”—*School World*.

“An extremely simple and interesting book.”—*Literary World*.

“The drill exercises are specially to be commended. In the presence of the impending campaign against classical education, it behoves its defenders to furbish up their weapons.”—*Saturday Review*.

“*Ora Maritima* does for Latin what the modern oral methods do for French and German, *i.e.*, it makes the beginner realise that the language is really a vehicle of expression, whereby common-sense notions can be conveyed. From personal experience I can testify how a few weeks are sufficient to gain this all-important idea; and it is worth adding that in a school which I have recently inspected a small boy of eleven employed his leisure time in working through *Ora Maritima* to the end, and then came to his master for the sequel *Pro Patria*. There was no need to tell that boy that Latin is something more than a phalanx of declinable nouns and verbs.”—ALFRED HUGHES, M.A., Professor of Education in the University of Birmingham.

**PRO PATRIA:** a Latin Story, being a sequel to *Ora Maritima*, with Grammar and Exercises to the end of the Regular Accidence. By Professor SONNENSCHN. (*Tenth Thousand, crown 8vo, price 2s. 6d., subject to discount.*)

The story includes a sketch of the history of Britain under the Romans and Saxons, down to the introduction of Christianity. The latter part of the story recounts the history of the Boer War down to June, 1900.

## OPINIONS

“The books are admirable, and under the guidance of a skilful teacher their use in class is followed by excellent results.”—Professor MICHAEL E. SADLER, LL.D., Manchester.

“I have had both books prescribed for use in our earliest standards. They were acknowledged by the Committee which passed them to be unequalled for the interesting way in which they presented the subject. I think no praise is too high for them.”—W. G. WEDDERSPOON, M.A., H.M. Inspector of European Schools and Training Colleges, Burma.

"I have started my own small boys in Latin with *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria*, and am delighted with both books: they indicate a method which is attractive to the child without being superficial."—Sir ARTHUR HORT, M.A., Harrow School.

"In a long experience I have found *Pro Patria* quite the best book which I have ever come across for arousing and sustaining the interest of small boys in their elementary stage of Latin Translation."—The Rev. PHILIP CRICK, M.A., St. Ronan's, Worthing.

**THE GREEK WAR OF INDEPENDENCE.** The Story of the War of Independence (1821-1827) is told in classical Greek for the use of beginners, with Notes and Exercises. By C. D. CHAMBERS, M.A. (*Crown 8vo, price 3s., subject to discount.*)

### OPINIONS

"Felicitous in design and able in execution. There is, in our opinion, a future for books of this type—books classical in language and modern in subject-matter. As a specimen of Mr. Chambers' skill in reproducing the grave Thucydidean style, the account of Byron's arrival in Greece and of his too early death is excellent."—*Journal of Education*.

"Most ably planned and most successfully executed. It gives reality and interest to the early study of Greek."—*Educational Times*.

"A most valuable schoolbook. The narrative is bright and interesting, and well illustrated with maps and photographs. We strongly recommend the book to all schoolmasters."—*The Oxford Magazine*.

"The text makes a capital reader."—*Guardian*.

### JUST PUBLISHED

**AM RHEIN:** a German Story for Beginners, with Grammar and Exercises in Conversation, Free Composition, and Translation. By Professor KARL WICHMANN, Ph.D. (*Crown 8vo, price 2s., subject to discount.*)

The scene of the story is laid in a country parsonage on the Rhine; in the latter part of the book the story of Siegfried and the Nibelungen is recounted.

### IN PREPARATION

**A FRENCH STORY FOR BEGINNERS,** on similar lines to the above.

# ORA MARITIMA SERIES

Edited by Professor E. A. SONNENSCHN, D.Litt. (Oxon).

Published by KEGAN. PAUL, FRENCH, TRÜBNER & Co., Ltd.

---

A great deal of thought has been devoted of recent years to the improvement of the methods of teaching languages, and in this movement Prof. Sonnenschein has played a leading part. *Ora Maritima* achieved an immediate and remarkable success and, indeed, created an epoch in the history of elementary Latin books, having been taken as a model by many other writers of books for beginners. Of the 6th Edition twenty thousand copies were struck off, and it will soon be exhausted. The book has been adopted by the Syndicate for the local Examinations of the University of Cambridge as a prescribed subject for the Preliminary Local Examination of 1912; and the publishers have received a large number of letters expressing approval of the principles and execution of this book from teachers who have had personal experience of its use, and from no one have they heard anything but good of it. Apart from the fact that it provides an interesting story as a basis for the study of the elements of grammar, attention is called to the fact that the amount of grammatical matter introduced is strictly limited. Sir A. F. Hort of Harrow, lays great stress upon this. The story is told without going beyond verbs of the 1st Conjugation and nouns of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Declensions; and all the grammar that is needed for the use of the book is given in the volume, all further grammar being left for subsequent courses. The drill exercises provide material for *viva voce* practice on the oral method, and also practice in writing simple Latin.

In view of the fact that some teachers found that the exercises in *Ora Maritima* did not give them all the straightforward practice that they desired, a volume of *Supplementary Exercises* has been produced by Miss M. L. Stafford Smith, M.A., containing not only a large number of simple sentences for translation into Latin, based on the elementary rules of syntax which are illustrated in *Ora Maritima*, but also useful vocabularies of the commonest classical words; and these Exercises have been found very useful, especially for slower children.

The other volumes of the Series are based on corresponding principles. Mr. Chambers' *Greek War of Independence* is the work

of a scholar who has paid special attention to the style and grammar of Thucydides, and his text is scrupulously modelled on the grammar and diction of the great Attic historian. The narrative introduces the pupil to an important episode of modern history (1821-1827).

Prof. Wichmann's *Am Rhein* provides an excellent introduction not only to the German language, but also to everyday life in modern Germany. It contains a useful vocabulary and abundant material for oral work, as well as for written exercises.

A French "*Ora Maritima*" has long been a desideratum. In the preparation of *En Vacances* a great deal of labour has been devoted during the past three years, and it is hoped that the book will prove worthy of a place in the Series.

The Publishers, Messrs. Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co., Broadway House, Carter Lane, London, E.C., will be happy to send a free copy of any of the volumes in this series to teachers who make application for them with a view to their introduction.

Each of the Readers in the Series consists of a continuous story written in the language to be studied, and so constructed as to form the basis of a systematic study of Grammar. They thus combine the interest and vitality of a real story with a thorough training in the fundamentals of the language concerned.

1. **ORA MARITIMA**, an illustrated Latin Story for Beginners, with Grammar and Exercises on the elements of the regular Accidence, by the Editor of the Series.

Sixth Edition, 1909. Cloth 8vo, price 2/- (subject to discount).

The scene of the story is laid on the South Coast of England and includes a sketch of the ancient Britons and of Cæsar's invasions of Britain.

2. **SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES TO ORA MARITIMA**, by Miss M. L. STAFFORD SMITH, M.A., Head Mistress of the Durham High School for Girls.

Limp Covers, price 1/- (subject to discount).

3. **PRO PATRIA**, a Sequel to "*Ora Maritima*," with Grammar and Exercises to the end of the regular Accidence, illustrated with pictures and maps, by the Editor of the Series.

Cloth 8vo, price 2/- (subject to discount).

The story includes a sketch of the history of Britain under the Romans and Saxons, down to the introduction of Christianity. The latter part of the story recounts the history of the Boer War down to June, 1900.



- 4 THE GREEK WAR OF INDEPENDENCE, an illustrated Greek Story for Beginners on the same lines as "Ora Maritima" and "Pro Patria" with Grammar and Exercises to the end of the regular Accidence, illustrated with pictures and maps, by C. D. CHAMBERS, M.A.

A new Edition will be issued immediately. Cloth 8vo, price 3/- (subject to discount).

5. AM RHEIN, an illustrated German Story for Beginners, by Professor K. WICHMANN, Ph.D.

Second Edition, 1909. Cloth 8vo, price 2/- (subject to discount).

6. EN VACANCES, an illustrated French Story for Beginners, with Grammar and Exercises on the elements of the regular Accidence, by M. I. EBBUTT, M.A., Headmistress of Tanglewood School, Barnt Green, and ANATOLE LE DU, Professeur Agrégé de l' Université.

Cloth 8vo, price 2/- (subject to discount).

#### OPINIONS ON ORA MARITIMA AND PRO PATRIA.

"*Ora Maritima* is just A1, clearly right in conception and admirably executed."—P. A. BARNETT, H.M. Chief Inspector for the Training of Teachers. In his "commonsense in Education and Teaching," p. 210, Mr. Barnett wrote: *We must convince our pupils of the reality of the study of Latin by introducing them at as early a period as possible to a real book.*

"We have adopted both *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria* in our Latin classes at Manchester Grammar School and have never had reason to regret their adoption. Both books have interest and continuity, and both lend themselves to oral practice."—J. L. PATON, High Master of the Manchester Grammar School.

"*Ora Maritima* proves an ideal book for a first Reader."—W. H. D. ROUSE, Litt.D., Headmaster of the Perse School, Cambridge.

"The most attractive introduction to Latin that has come under my notice, and I have seen most of them in the secondary schools which I inspect."—JOHN KERR, LL.D., Late H.M. Chief Inspector of Schools and Training Colleges in Scotland.

"It makes a new departure in the teaching of Latin which ought to be productive of great good."—A. E. SCOUGAL, H.M. Senior Chief Inspector of Schools in Scotland.

"I have had both books prescribed for use in our earliest standards. They were acknowledged by the committee which passed them to be unequalled for the interesting way in which they present the subject. I think no praise is too high for them."—W. G. WEDDERSPOON, M.A., H.M. Inspector of European Schools and Training Colleges, Burma.

"These books are admirable, and under the guidance of a skilful teacher their use in schools is followed by excellent results."—Prof. M. E. SADLER, LL.D., Manchester.

"I have used *Ora Maritima* in actual teaching, and have found it both interesting and instructive to the pupil."—Prof. J. P. POSTGATE, Litt.D., Liverpool.

"I have started my own small boys in Latin with *Ora Maritima* and *Pro Patria* and am delighted with both books. They indicate a method which is attractive to the child without being superficial."—Sir ARTHUR HORT, M.A., Harrow.

"In a long experience I have found *Pro Patria* quite the best book which I have ever come across for arousing and sustaining the interest of small boys in their elementary stage of Latin translation."—The Rev. PHILIP CRICK, M.A., St. Ronan's, Worthing.

"*Ora Maritima* does for Latin what the modern oral methods do for French and German, *i.e.*, it makes the beginner realize that the language is really a vehicle of expression, whereby commonsense notions can be conveyed. From personal experience I can testify how a few weeks are sufficient to gain this all-important idea; and it is worth adding that in a school which I have recently inspected a small boy of eleven employed his leisure time in working through *Ora Maritima* to the end and then came to his master for the sequel, *Pro Patria*. There was no need to tell that boy that Latin is something more than a phalanx of declinable nouns and verbs."—ALFRED HUGHES, M.A., Organizing Professor of Education in the University of Birmingham.

"*Ora Maritima* is a charming book. We know no better epithet by which to describe such an introduction to the Latin tongue. . . . It is giving a strong recommendation to say, as we gladly do, that our author has given us the ideal book which he formerly described."—*Secondary Education*.

## OPINIONS ON THE GREEK WAR OF INDEPENDENCE.

"Felicitous in design and able in execution. There is, in our opinion, a future for books of this type—books classical in language and modern in subject-matter. As a specimen of Mr. Chambers' skill in reproducing the grave Thucydidean style, the account of Byron's arrival in Greece and of his too early death is excellent."—*Journal of Education*.

"Most ably planned and most successfully executed. It gives reality and interest to the early study of Greek."—*Educational Times*.

"A most valuable schoolbook. The narrative is bright and interesting, and well illustrated with maps and photographs. We strongly recommend the book to all schoolmasters."—*The Oxford Magazine*.

"The text makes a capital reader."—*Guardian*.

## OPINIONS ON AM RHEIN.

"Professor Wichmann has conceived and written a pleasant text, fresh with interest and free from stodginess. . . . A large part of the book is taken up with an account of the adventures of Siegfried, related by Professor Wichmann in that simple and graceful narrative style to which both the story and the German language lend themselves so well. We think we know the schoolboy's heart, and

'The gleams and glooms that dart

Across the schoolboy's brain;'

and we believe that the adventures of Siegfried will commend themselves to him."—*Modern Language Teaching*.







